



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

4th
PRIMARY FOUR
FIRST TERM

2025

الصف الرابع الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول



Contents





مراجعة على ماسبق دارسته بالصف الثالث الابتدائى

A Revision on Vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

Countries and nationalities دول وجنسيات


France فرنسا


French فرنسية


Egypt مصر


Egyptian مصرية


America امريكا


American امريكى


China الصين


Chinese صينى

Food and drinks أطعمة ومشروبات


banana
موزة


apple
تفاحة


water
مياه


fish
سمك


fruit
فاكهة


vegetables
خضراوات


ful
فول مدمس


falafel
طعمية / فلافل


muffin
كعكة أسفنجية


hot chocolate
مشروب شيكولاتة ساخنة


tea شاى


bread خبز


milk لبن


noodles شعرية


soup شوربة


chicken لحم دجاج / دجاجة


rice ارز

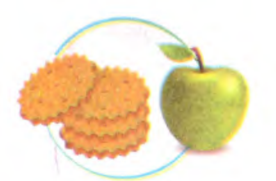

potatoes بطاطس

Meals الوجبات


breakfast
وجبة الافطار


lunch
وجبة الغداء


dinner
وجبة العشاء


snack
وجبة خفيفة

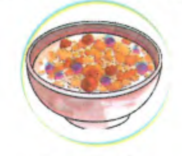
Healthy and unhealthy food الطعام الصحى وغير الصحى


carrots جزر


lettuce خس


apples تفاح


eggs بيض


cereals
طعام من الحبوب


dairy products
منتجات ا لبان


bread
خبز


meat
لحم


fruit
فاكهة


vegetables
خضراوات


fish
سمك


chocolate
شيكولاتة


ice cream ايس كريم

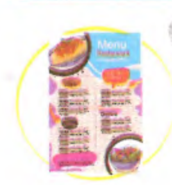

sweets حلوى


burger برجر


sugar سكر

At a restaurant فى المطعم


restaurant
مطعم


menu
قائمة الطعام


rice pudding
ارز بلبن


dessert
طعام التحلية


orange juice
عصير برتقال


burgers and fries
برجر وبطاطس مقلية


chicken and pasta
دجاج ومكرونة


chocolate cake
تورتة الشيكولاتة


cola كولا
(مشروب غازى)

A healthy heart قلب صحى


healthy diet
نظام غذائى صحى


water
ماء


salad
سلطة


exercise
يتدرب / يتمرن


heart
قلب


eat fruit
ياكل فاكهة


go for a walk
يذهب للتمشية

School subjects المواد الدراسية


math
الرياضيات


geography
الجغرافيا


Arabic
اللغة العربية


writing
الكتابة


reading
القراءة



English
اللغة الانجليزية


German
اللغة
الالمانية



music
حصة
الموسيقى


art
حصة
الرسم


PE
حصة التربية
البدنية


social studies
الدراسات
الاجتماعية


science
مادة العلوم

Revision

Days of the week ايام الاسبوع





Friday الجمعة



Saturday السبت



Sunday الأحد



Monday الإثنين



Tuesday الثلاثاء



Wednesday الأربعاء



Thursday الخميس

Seasons of the year فصول السنة



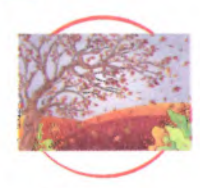
winter الشتاء



spring الربيع



summer الصيف



fall الخريف



cold بارد



sunny مشمس



hot حار



rainy ممطر

Months of the year شهور السنة



January
يناير



February
فبراير



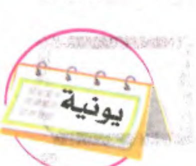
March
مارس



April
ابريل



May
مايو



June
يونية



July
يوليو



August
أغسطس



September
سبتمبر



October
أكتوبر



November
نوفمبر



December
ديسمبر

At the bazaar فى البازار





bazaar
سوق شرقى



earrings
حلق



bracelet
إسورة



ring
خاتم



market
سوق



necklace
عقد



jewelry
حلى / مجوهرات



fabric
قماش



perfume
عطر/برفان

Digital Technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية



internet
شبكة الإنترنت



computer
كمبيوتر



watch videos
يشاهد فيديوهات



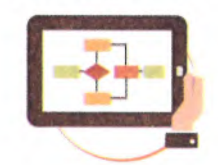
website
موقع على الإنترنت



photo
صورة



download
ينزل/يحمل بيانات



tablet
تابلت (كمبيوتر لوحى)



notebook
كراسة


cell phone
هاتف محمول


keyboard
لوحة المفاتيح

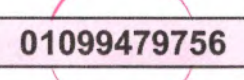

mouse
فأرة الكمبيوتر


information
معلومات


screen
شاشة


arrow
سهم


address
عنوان مكان



telephone number
رقم التليفون


password
كلمة السر


keyword
كلمة مفتاحية


search
يبحث



search engine
محرك بحث

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم




foot قدم


feet اقدام


leg رجل

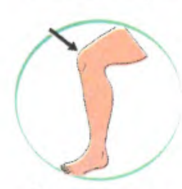

mouth فم


arm ذراع


nose انف


eye عين


hand يد


knee ركبة


heart قلب


skin جلد


bone عظمة


hair شعر


teeth أسنان


stomach معدة

Feelings المشاعر


happy
سعيد


sad
حزين


hungry
جوعان


thirsty
عطشان


angry
غاضب


excited
متحمس


tired
متعب

At home فى المنزل


cupboard
خزانة/دولاب


table
ترابيزة / منضدة


television
تليفزيون


chair
كرسى


armchair
كرسى ذو مسندين


clock
ساعة حائط


bookcase
خزانة كتب


couch
كنبة


lamp
مصباح / اباجورة

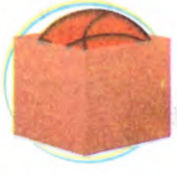
Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان


between بين


on على


behind خلف


next to بجوار


in فى

B Revision on Language Functions مراجعة على الوظائف اللغوية



- Where are you from?
- I'm from America.



- I'm from France. I'm French.

3 لتسأل شخص عن الشهر المفضل له

What's your favorite month?

وللاجابة نقول:

I like + (الشهر) + best + because it's + حالة الجو فى هذا الفصل.

- What's your favorite month?
- I like January best because it's cold.

4 لتسال شخص عن يوم ميلاده

- When is your birthday? - My birthday is on March 11th.

5 للسؤال فى مطعم عن الطعام الذى تريده

- What would you like (to eat)?
- I'd like (would like) + الطعام للاجابة
- I'd like pasta and chicken, please.

6 وممكن أن نسأل باستخدام

Would you like some + نوع الطعام? هل تريد بعض من + (الطعام)؟

- Would you like some fries?

Yes, please. نعم من فضلك No, thank you. لا شكرا لك.

7 لتقول انا افضل نوع من الطعام

I prefer + الطعام.

- I prefer potatoes.



C Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية

1 Verb to be (present) فعل يكون فى المضارع

I → am = ('m)

He / She / It → is = ('s)

We / You / They → are = ('re)

- I'm a doctor.
- She's my mother.
- They're happy.

2 Past simple زمن الماضى البسيط

➤ تنقسم الأفعال فى الماضى البسيط إلى أفعال منتظمة وهى الأفعال التى نكون منها الماضى باضافة (ied - d - ed) إلى مصدر الفعل:

cook → cooked travel → traveled

➤ وهناك افعال تسمى الافعال غير المنتظمة وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف لها (ed) فى الماضى وتحفظ كما هى:

do → did give → gave

➤ نستخدم زمن الماضى للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى.

– يتكون الماضى البسيط من:

Subject (فاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل.

- I **bought** a present yesterday.

- لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل .

- We **didn't work** for the test.

- للسؤال فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What **did** you do yesterday?
- We **went** to the park.

- هناك كلمات تدل على الماضى البسيط مثل:

yesterday / last (week – month – year) / ago / in 2020

Revision

3 And, so and but

- نستخدم (and) للربط بين جملتين لهما نفس الافكار لاضافة فكرة مشابهة لما ذكرناه سابقا.

- I like ice cream **and** chocolate.

- نستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لنبين النتيجة.

- She has a present **so** she is happy.

- نستخدم (but) للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين أو جملة مثبتة والاخرى منفية.

- He wants to call his dad, **but** he doesn't have a cell phone.

---

4 Present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

- نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبيرعن شئ يحدث الان (اثناء الكلام).
- يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر كما يلى:

1	2	3
I	am	
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are	

- I'm **drawing** a cat.

Question

- للسؤال ماذا تفعل؟ (فى المضارع المستمر)

- What **are** you **doing**? ماذا تفعل؟

- وللإجابة نقول:

- I **am taking** a photo.

Negative

- لنفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع **not** بين **am / is/ are** والفعل:

1	2	3	4
I	am		
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is	+ not	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are		

- I am **not** playing sports.
- He is **not** taking photos.

---

5 Prepositions حروف الجر

- نستخدم (at) مع الوقت:

- I start school **at** eight o'clock.

- نستخدم (in) مع اوقات اليوم :

- **in** the morning / **in** the afternoon/ **in** the evening

- نستخدم (on) مع ايام الاسبوع:

- I have no school **on** Friday.

Punctuation
علامات الترقيم



Capital Letters
الحروف الكبيرة
A - B - C

1. بداية الجملة
خبرية - استفهامية - أمرية

2. الألقاب
Mr - Miss - Mrs
الاختصارات
Dr - CD - TV

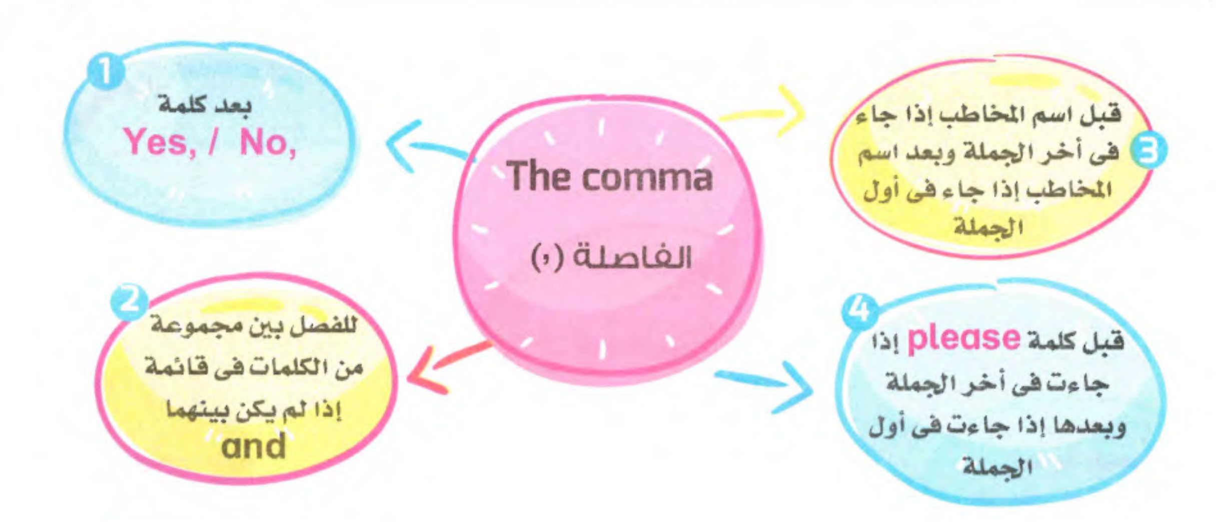
3. أنا I
الضمير I فى أى مكان فى الجملة capital

4. أسماء البلاد والمدن
Cairo - Alexandria
أسماء الشهور
June - March

5. أسماء الأشخاص
Mariam - Adel
أيام الأسبوع
Sunday - Monday

Examples:

1. **M**r Hisham is a doctor. (جملة خبرية)
2. **O**pen the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**hat's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **A**lexandria in **J**uly. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**rs Noha visited the zoo on **M**onday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Adel. / Adel, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your book? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Asharf. (علامة تعجب)



1 Choose the right answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. **A:** Where are you from? **B:** I'm from (Egypt - Chinese - Egyptian).
2. I have no school (in - of - on) Friday.
3. October is my favorite (color - month - day).
4. She's (drawing - draw - draws) a picture.
5. What (do - does - did) you do yesterday?

---

1. I watch videos on my (tablet - book - pen).
2. I like ice cream (but - and - so) chocolate.
3. I'd (like - to like - liked) chicken, please.
4. I (visit - visits - visited) the museum last week.
5. The (heart - skin - stomach) digests our food.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tired - hot - going - swim

My favorite season is the summer. It's very ❶ .... in the summer. I can go to the beach and ❷ .... in the sea with my family. I enjoy ❸ .... to Alexandria.

finish - school - play - math

I'm Samy. I'm in primary three. I start ❶ .... at eight o'clock. In the morning we have writing and ❷ .... We have science and English in the afternoon. I ❸ .... school around two o'clock.

3 Write two sentences under each picture:

اكتب جملتين تحت كل صورة:



China - Chinese



summer - beach

cell phone - games

kitchen - cook dinner

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات ترقيم للآتى:

1. where's the park ______
2. it's on the computer ______
3. do you like ice cream ______
4. my knee hurts ______
5. i like cold weather ______
6. what did Maha do yesterday ______
7. there's a couch in the living room ______
8. when is your birthday ______
9. there's a table next to the armchair ______
10. can you download photos ______





How to write a paragraph?
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ١٨ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطي للتلاميذ عناصر مساعدة مثل كلمتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شىء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	مكان / ظرف زمان / صفة / حال
Adel	park	table	is eating / eat / eats	was going / went	school / yesterday tall / well

ثانياً: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	Eman is hungry.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Ashraf is a doctor.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	We went to the circus.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We play on Friday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help her.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	I sleep at 10 o'clock.

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ١٨ كلمة عن:

Your weekend

Guiding words

shopping - bought

I went shopping last weekend. I went with my mother by taxi. I bought a blue T-shirt and white socks. Then, I ate ice cream. I had a great time.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about....................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I had a new dress. My new dress is white and red. My dress is very nice. I will wear it on my birthday party.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية .

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.

أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in a sentence.

I went to Alexandria last summer. I went with my family. We saw the beach and swam in the sea. It was a great holiday.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بمدينة **Alexandria**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو الذهاب إلى الاسكندرية وماذا فعلت هناك والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **went / saw / swam**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

I went to Alexandria, saw the beach and swam in the sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My brother is a vet. He likes helping sick animals. He is kind. I want to be a vet like my brother.

١- أهم شخص **My brother**

٢- وأهم شئ يخصه أنه طبيب بيطرى وأنا أريد أن أكون مثله.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My brother is a vet and I want to be like my brother.

Lesson 1 Let's remember!

1 What can you see in the photo? Look and say:

ماذا ترى فى الصورة ؟ انظر وقل :



2 Read and match the questions and answers:

اقرأ ثم صل السؤال بإجابته :

1. How tall is the Cairo Tower?
2. What would you like?
3. Where are you from?
4. What did you do yesterday?
5. How long is the Sphinx?
6. When's your birthday?

a. I visited the bazaar. I bought a bag.
b. It's 187 meters.
c. It's on January 19th.
d. I'm from China. I'm Chinese.
e. It's seventy-three meters long.
f. I'd like some water, please.

3 Look and write. What is the mystery word in yellow?

انظر وأكتب ما هى كلمة السر المظللة باللون الأصفر؟



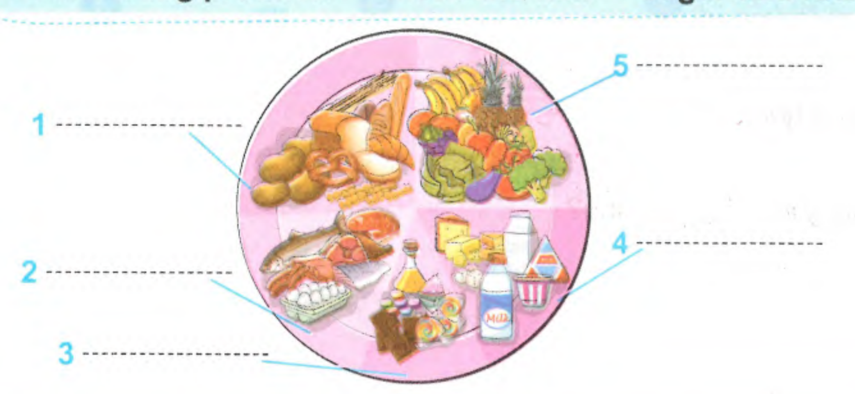
				1 b	r	e	a	d
				2				
				3				
			4					
5								
				6				
	7							
				8				
9								

The mystery word is: ---------------

4 Look and write:

انظر واكتب :

bread, cereals and potatoes - fruit and vegetables
milk and dairy products - meat and fish - sugar and fats



5 What is a healthy diet? Look and say:

ماهو النظام الغذائى الصحى؟ انظر وقل :

Lesson 2 Let's remember!

1 Read and order: اقرأ ورتب:

April		March	
February		September	
June		December	
October		July	
August		May	
January	1	November	

2 Listen, answer and write: استمع واجب واكتب:

استمع إلى الإسئلة

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- What's the weather like?
2- Where's he from?
3- What do you drink for breakfast?
4- What did you buy?
5- How much is it?
6- What is it?
7- What's it made of?
8- How much money do you have?

❶ It's sunny.
❷ ------------------
❸ ------------------
❹ ------------------

❺ 5 L.E ------------------
❻ ------------------
❼ ------------------
❽ ------------------

3 Write about your weekend. You can use the words below:

اكتب عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك. يمكنك استخدام الكلمات التى بالأسفل:

go - see - buy - have

I went shopping last weekend. I ______________

____

I ______________________________________

I had a great time!

I went shopping. I ......

4 Read and add the correct capital letters:

أقرأ واضف الحروف الكبيرة فى مكانها الصحيح :

hi! I'm shorouk! i live in alexandria. the library of alexandria is a big and famous library in my city. yesterday it was sunny. my family visited the park at the montaza palace.





Specification for Fourth year primary

مواصفات الصف الرابع الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Primary 4
2024 - 2025

Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FORTY (40)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark and a half each)**

B- Reading (14 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(One mark each)**

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO (2) of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

(One mark each)

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO (2) of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

6 Punctuate the following: (1 Mark)

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided (**Capital letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(Half a mark each)

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file..... etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)



I discover myself

I feel good!

أشعر أنى بخير



لنطق
الكلمات الجديدة التي
أعلاها علامة نجمة*
أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit
أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة وكيف يحافظ على صحته.

2. Practice making sentences with and or but.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).

3. Read and listen to a Chinese folktale.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة شعبية صينية.

4. Distinguish long and short vowels.

- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة والقصيرة.

5. Talk about a place in Egypt.

- يتكلم الطالب عن مكان فى مصر.

6. Research and make a presentation.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.



Lesson 1 ★ Food and drink



Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

Food and drink
الطعام والشراب

- tomato — ثمرة طماطم
- rice* — أرز
- chicken — دجاجة / لحم دجاج
- potato — ثمرة بطاطس
- onion* — بصلة
- banana — موزة
- grapes — عنب
- mango — ثمرة مانجو
- watermelon — بطيخة
- sugarcane — قصب السكر
- milk — لبن

Meals
الوجبات


breakfast الافطار




lunch الغداء


dinner العشاء

Other words كلمات أخرى

ready	جاهز	delicious*	لذيذ
vegetables	خضراوات	country	دولة
fruit	فاكهة	healthy	صحي
special* food	طعام مميز	Egyptian*	مصري
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟	farmers	فلاحين / مزارعين
yum = yummy	لذيذ		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
produce	ينتج	produced
raise	يربى (للحيوانات)	raised
look	يبدو	looked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
grow	يزرع	grew
make	يعد الطعام	made
eat	يأكل	ate
keep	يربى (حيوانات)	kept
feed	يطعم	fed
think	يعتقد	thought



Definitions تعريفات

raise يربى : To keep and feed chickens to get eggs and meat.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 للتعبير أن الطعام شهى أو لذيذ

-It looks delicious. / Yum / Yummy.

2 للاقتراح نستخدم:

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

-Let's eat.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

◉ عند جمع الأسماء نضيف آخر الاسم حرف (s):

- banana → bananas onion → onions

◉ الأسماء التى تنتهى بالحروف (ch / sh / ss / o / s / x) يضاف آخرها (es) عند الجمع:

- mango → mangoes potato → potatoes

◉ وهناك أسماء لا تجمع مثل بعض الأطعمة وكل المشروبات:

- milk - rice

◉ كلمة (chicken) لا تجمع لو كنا تقصد لحم الدجاج وتجمع لو اشرنا إلي الدجاج الحي.



Study the following

1. Lunch is ready. - الغداء جاهز.
2. I made some special food for us. - أعدت طعام خاص لنا.
3. The food looks delicious. - يبدو الطعام شهى.
4. Which food comes from our country? - أى طعام يأتى من بلادنا ؟
5. We grow rice in Egypt. - نزرع الأرز فى مصر.
6. We raise chickens in Egypt. - نحن نربى الدجاج فى مصر.
7. Egyptian farmers produce many things. - يُنتج الفلاحون المصريون أشياء عديدة .
8. What meal are they having? - ما الوجبة التي يأكلوها ؟

1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Maged? استمع واقرأ. أين الأم وماجد؟


استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

Maged : Mom, it looks delicious!

Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right. What else?

Maged : Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

Maged : Yum!


Mom and Maged



2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة آخرى واجب عن الاسئلة :

1. What meal are they having?

(a) breakfast (b) lunch (c) dinner

2. What do Egyptian farmers produce?

a fruit and vegetables b chickens c both a and b

3. Maged thinks that Egyptian food is ....

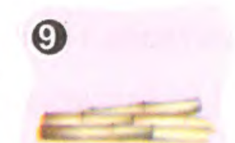
a healthy b yummy c both a and b

3 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

bananas - chicken - grapes - mangoes - milk
onions - potatoes - rice - sugarcane - watermelon

❶ 
❷ 
❸ 
❹ 
❺ 

chicken ------ ---------- ---------- ---------- ----------

❻ 
❼ 
❽ 
❾ 
❿ 

---------- ---------- ---------- ---------- ----------

Find out



What other animals do farmers raise in Egypt?
ما الحيوانات الاخرى التى يربيها المزارعون فى مصر؟

Egyptian farmers raise chickens and sheep.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Did you know that in Japan you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid?

هل تعلم أن اليابان تستطيع أن تشتري بطيخة علي شكل هرم؟



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Farmers are good for our ....

a city b street c park d country

2. Farmers grow ....

a bananas and apples b carrots and onions
c mangoes and potatoes d grapes and rice

3. Farmers raise ....

a birds b dogs c chickens d cats

4. There is .... food in Egypt.

a delicious b healthy c bad d unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The food looks .... I like it.

a bad b cold c delicious d dirty

2. Let's .... our lunch.

a eats b eat c eating d ate

3. We raise .... to get meat.

a chickens b onions c tomatoes d trees

4. Egyptian farmers .... rice in Egypt.

a raise b grow c think d play

5. **A:** .... meal are they having? **B:** Lunch.

a When b Where c Who d What

6. Farmers grow many fruits like .... القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون (2024)

a mangoes b beans c carrots d rice

Help your child deal with such questions. **ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.**

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

things - animals - ready - produce - fruit

Egyptian farmers are important in our country. They ❶ .... our food. They grow many ❷ ...., They grow ❸ .... in Egypt. They can keep many ❹ .... They can raise chickens, too.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Let's .... (**eating**) our lunch.
2. There are some .... (**potato**) in the kitchen.
3. What meal are they .... (**have**)?
4. I want to eat a .... (**bananas**).

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what animals do farmers raise in Egypt

---

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Egyptian farmers

grow - raise

Lesson 2 ★ I am healthy

استمع إلى المفردات:



play football
يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball
يلعب كرة السلة



drink water
يشرب مياه



exercise
يتمرن



Healthy
صحي

eat vegetables
يأكل خضراوات



drink cola
يشرب كولا



Unhealthy
غير صحي



eat candy
يأكل حلوى



play video games
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو



Other words كلمات أخرى

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
really	بالفعل
different	مختلف
awesome	رائع
milkshake	مخفوق اللبن
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
fresh juices	عصائر طازجة
busy	مشغول
scientist	عالم
plants	نباتات
interesting	شيق
burger	سندوتش برجر
salads	انواع سلطة
week	أسبوع

Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy things. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأشياء الصحية وغير الصحية.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
practice	يمارس	practiced
talk	يتكلم	talked
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at
walk	يمشي	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
do	يفعل	did
drink	يشرب	drank

Grammar قواعد لغوية

And و / But لكن

◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أى انها تضيف للمعنى:

- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.

◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.

Study the following

1. **Do you think you're healthy?** - هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة؟
2. **I do a lot of sport at school.** - امارس أنواع كثيرة من الرياضة فى المدرسة.
3. **I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.** - لا اتناول الحلوى، لكنى أحب الفاكهة.
4. **I'm in a wheelchair basketball team.** - أنا في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة.
5. **I drink cola, but I want to drink more water.** - اشرب المياه الغازية (الكولا) لكنى أريد شرب المزيد من الماء.
6. **Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants.** - ابى عالم وهو يحب أن ينظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.
7. **The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.** - الصحراء شيقة جدًا لكنها حارة جدًا.
8. **I want something sweet.** - أريد شيء ما فيه سكريات.
9. **I don't play video games because I'm very busy.** - لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جدًا.



Lesson 2

1 Listen to Adam, Dareen, and Judy talking about being healthy. Label the photos:

استمع إلى (آدم ودارين وجودى) حيث يتكلموا حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة. وضع الاسم تحت الصورة:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص: 

Narrator : 1

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Judy?

Judy : Yes, I do. I do a lot of sport(1) at school. On the weekend(2), I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses(3) and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome(4) banana milkshake(5)!.

Arabic Meaning
١- رياضة
٢- في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
٣- منازل مختلفة
٤- رائع
٥- مخفوق اللبن
٦- فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة
٧- ثلاث مرات
٨- عالم
٩- أحيانًا
١٠- فقط

Narrator : 2

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Adam?

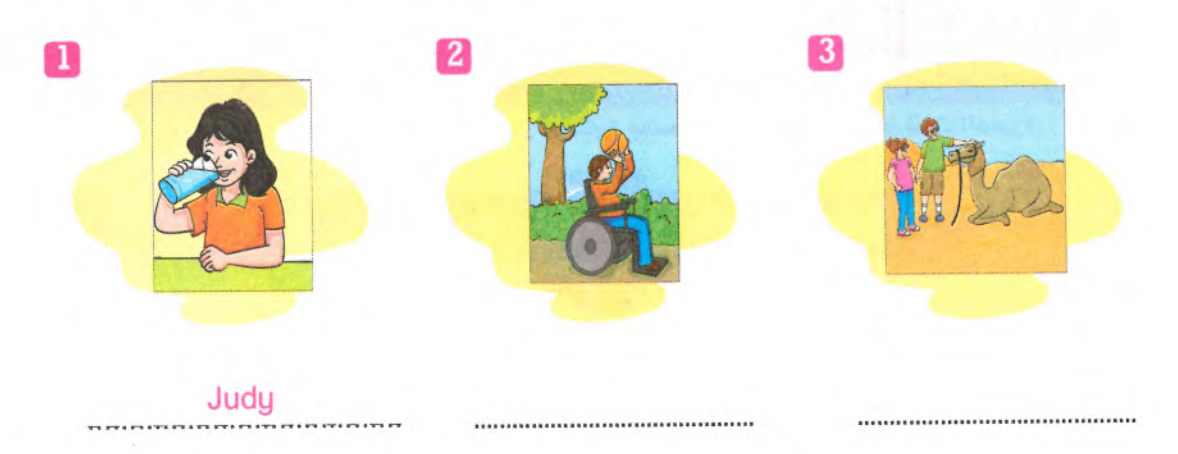
Adam : Yes, I'm in a wheelchair basketball team(6) at school. We practice three times(7) every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

Narrator : 3

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

Dareen : Yes, I think I'm healthy, My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist(8) and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes(9)! I only(10) drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.



Judy ____________ ____________ ____________

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة آخرى واجب عن الاسئلة :

1. Who never drinks cola?

____

2. Who plays basketball?

____

3. Who doesn't eat candy?

____

3 Listen again and complete the sentences with (and) or (but):

استمع للنص السابق مرة آخرى وأكمل الجمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن) :

1. I don't eat candy, ____________ I eat fruit when I want something sweet.

2. I don't drink cola, ____________ I drink fresh juices.

3. I play basketball ____________ I play football in the park.

4. Dad is a scientist ____________ he likes looking at animals and plants.

5. It's a very interesting place, ____________ it's very hot sometimes!



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

but - healthy - drink - eats - walk

My name is Laila. I like sports. I want to be ❶ ...., so I play football and basketball. I ❷ .... cola, ❸ .... I want to drink more water. I ❹ .... home from school every day.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Gamal. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. I'm healthy. I eat fruit and vegetables. I walk to the park. I play football and basketball. I never drink cola. I like water very much. My favorite fruits are apples and oranges. My mom makes yummy salads.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Gamal is .... years old.

   a eleven b nine c seven d ten

2. Gamal never drinks ....

   a cola b fruit c juice d water

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Gamal's mom make?

---

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

---

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I want to play football, ... (and) my leg hurts. القاهرة - الزيتون (2024)

2. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes .... (but) potatoes in Egypt. مطروح - مطروح (2024)

3. I like to play football .... (but) tennis. كفر الشيخ - قلين (2024)

4. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I eat fruit. الشرقية - ابو حماد (2024)

5. He can speak English .... (or) Arabic.

6. I eat vegetables .... (but) I exercise.

7. I want to play football, ... (and) I'm ill.

8. I practice basketball .... (but) football.

9. I like chocolate .... (but) ice cream.

10. Nabil speaks English, ... (and) he can't speak Chinese.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

الشرقية - ابوحماد (2024)

1. do you think you're healthy

- -

2. my mom makes yummy salads

- -

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Being healthy

water - sports

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Lesson 3 ★ The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





emperor امبراطور



palace قصر



king ملك



gardener بستاني



seeds بذور



empty pot أصيص زرع فارغ

Other words كلمات أخرى

folktale	قصة شعبية	next	القادم
competition	مسابقة	honest	أمين
China	الصين	honesty	الأمانة
important man	رجل مهم	dead	ميت
nothing	لا شيء	everyone	كل شخص / الجميع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
water	يسقي الزرع	watered
plant	يزرع	planted
try	يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take	يأخذ	took
grow	ينمو	grew
put	يضع	put
bring	يحضر	brought

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Unit 1 I feel good

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
lie	يكذب	lied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
win	يفوز	won
lose	يخسر	lost



Definitions تعريفات

emperor	أمبراطور	someone who is like a king	شخص مثل الملك
palace	قصر	a place where an emperor lives	مكان يعيش فيه الأمبراطور
honest	أمين	someone doesn't lie	شخص لا يكذب



Study the following

1. The most important man in China was the emperor.
   - كان الأمبراطور أهم رجل في الصين.
2. He lived in a beautiful palace.
   - عاش في قصر جميل.
3. There will be a competition.
   - سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
4. I will give a seed to each gardener.
   - سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
5. Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
   - كان تشن ماهرًا في زراعة الأشياء والأهتمام بحديقته.
6. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
   - وضع البذرة في الشمس واعطاها المياه.
7. The seeds I gave everyone were dead.
   - البذور التي أعطيتها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
8. You will be the next emperor.
   - سوف تكون الامبراطور القادم.
9. Honesty is more important than winning.
   - الأمانة أهم من الفوز.



1 Read and listen. Where did Cheng live? اقرأ واستمع. أين عاش تشن؟



استمع إلى النص:

The Empty Pot: A Folktale from China!

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor(1). He lived in a beautiful palace(2). One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition(3). I will give a seed to each gardener(4). The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it. " says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after(5) his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing(6) happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone (7) were dead(8). The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest(9). So you will be the next(10) emperor!".

Arabic Meaning

١- أمبراطور
٢- قصر
٣-مسابقة
٤-بستاني
٥- الإعتناء بـ
٦- لا شيء
٧-كل شخص
٨- ميتة
٩- أمين
١٠-القادم

2 Circle the correct meaning: ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح:

1. An emperor is someone who is like a ....

   a king b farmer

2. A palace is where an emperor ....

   a travels b lives

3. Someone who is honest ....

a does not lie   b lies

4. In a competition someone tries to ....

a win   b lose

3 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Cheng was good at growing things.		
2 Cheng didn't like being in his garden.		
3 The emperor gave all the gardeners a seed to plant.		
4 Cheng's seed grew into a big, beautiful flower.		
5 Cheng looked after the seed, and gave it sun and water.		
6 Cheng was sad and took the empty pot to the emperor.		
7 Cheng wasn't the next emperor as his seed didn't grow.		

4 What is the moral of this story?

ما الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة؟

a Winning is very important. الفوز مهم جدًا.

b Honesty is more important than winning. الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

c Everyone should plant a seed. يجب أن يزرع كل شخص بذرة.

Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.
- الاصوات القصيرة غالبا تحتوى على حرف متحرك واحد (bag / pen / mix / mom / bus)
- الاصوات الممتدة تحتوى على صوتين متحركين (cake / feet / rice / nose / blue)



استمع إلى المفردات:





- ندرس أيضاً البادئة (re) التي تأتى أول الفعل بمعنى يعيد عمل.

Prefix (re) means again البادئة (re) تعنى مرة أخرى

redo	يعيد فعل/يجدد	repaint	يعيد دهان
reclean	يعيد تنظيف	remake	يعيد عمل
replant	يعيد زراعة		

Help your child learn about short and long vowels. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.

1 Look at the pictures and complete the words: انظر إلى الصور واكمل الكلمات:

1

b _ g

2

c _ k _

3

m _ m

4

n _ s _

5

m _ x

6

r _ c _

2 Read and change the verbs with "re": اقرأ وغير الافعال باستخدام البادئة (re):

The prefix "re" means "again".

The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to replant them.

لاحظ (again) تعنى مرة آخرى ولاعادة كتابة الجمل نحذف again ونضع (re) قبل الفعل.

1. Ramez painted his house again. He repainted his house .
2. Nada cleaned her bike again. She recleaned her bike .
3. The chef made rice again.

----

4. Shaimaa did her homework again.

CLIL: MATH

Comparing large digits / Ascending order
مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة / الترتيب التصاعدي

- Bassem wants to be healthy, so he walks 178,880 meters a day.

يريد باسم أن يكون بصحة جيدة، لذلك هو يمشي ١٧٨,٨٨٠ متر كل يوم.

نتعلم اولاً العلامات الرياضية حيث : (=) تعنى يساوى/ (<) تعنى أصغر من/ (>) تعنى أكبر من.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة كمايلى:

١ . بشكل عام العدد الذى به ارقام أكثر هو العدد الاكبر.

100,000 53,978

نلاحظ هنا أن العدد **(100,000)** يتكون من **(6)** أرقام والعدد **(53,978)** يتكون من **(5)** أرقام إذا العدد الأكبر هو **(100,000)**.

٢ . إذا تساوى العددين نقارن أول رقم بالعدد الأول مع أول رقم بالعدد الآخر (مقارنة الرقم يكون من اليسار إلى اليمين).

512,345 612,345

هنا تساوى العددين فى عدد الأرقام. نبدأ المقارنة من أول رقم ونلاحظ أن **6 > 5** إذا **612,345** هو العدد الأكبر.

835,597 835,497

- عند مقارنة العددين نلاحظ تساوى أول ثلاثة أرقام **(835)** لكن **4 < 5** إذا العدد **835,597** هو الأكبر.

Ascending order التّرتيب التّصاعدي

هو ترتيب الاعداد من الصغير إلى الكبير كما تعلمنا فى الفقرة السابقة نحدد من هو العدد الصغير والكبير ثم نرتب من أصغر عدد إلى أكبر عدد. قارن الآتى:

87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

87,092 < 87,909 < 87,990

Help your child learn about comparing large digits and ascending order.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة والترتيب التصاعدى.

1 Look and say: انظر وقل:

544,432	five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two
178,880	one hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred and eighty

2 Put the correct sign (>,< , or =): ضع العلامة الصحيحة (<، > أو =):

1. 655,534 [<] 698,881
2. 10,000,000 [ ] ten million
3. 100,000,000 [ ] 99,999,999

3 Arrange these numbers in ascending order: رتب الأرقام ترتيب تصاعدى:

1. 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

----

2. 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665

----

3. 20,000 – 20,310 – 19,311

Find out



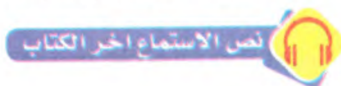
The numerical digits we use today 1, 2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago. Can you find the smallest five-digit number?

إن الاعداد التى نستخدمها حاليا (1 , 2 ,3) مأخوذة من نظام العد الهندى العربى. تطور هذا النظام عبر ١٠٠٠ عام مضت. هل تستطيع معرفة اصغر عدد يتكون من خمسة ارقام؟ ......



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. The king lived in a ....

   a garden b palace c flat d school

2. Ali looked .... the trees and flowers.

   a after b for c at d on

3. Ali found a bag of .... coins.

   a silver b glass c gold d wood

4. Ali was ...., so the king was happy.

   a bad b careless c funny d honest

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....

   a desert b garden c school d palace

2. We .... our homework.

   a recycled b redid c repainted d recleaned

3. A/An .... is someone who looks after gardens.

   a scientist b emperor c gardener d king

4. We put the .... in the pot to grow.

   a seeds b water c food d candy

5. My friend is kind and ....

   a dead b honest c bad d unhealthy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

competition - honest - palace - won - lie

I love my school. I learn many things there. Yesterday, our teacher taught us a great lesson. He told us to be ❶ .... and never ❷ .... Then, I entered a running ❸ .... and I ❹ .... the first prize.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It's about an emperor who lived in a big palace. One day, he asked the gardeners to come to his palace. He gave them seeds and empty pots. He told them the one who grew the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor. Cheng, the gardener, was good at growing things. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But Cheng's seed had no plants because it was dead. Cheng was honest, so he became the next emperor.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a .... from China.

a picture b folktale c book d paper

2. The emperor gave the gardeners ....

a plants b vegetables c seeds d flowers

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was Cheng the next emperor?

----

4. Did Cheng grow a beautiful plant?

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The seeds .... (was) dead.
2. Cheng was looking .... (for) his garden.
3. Cheng .... (lives) long ago in China.
4. I want to plant a flower, ... (and) I don't have seeds.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. where's your plant

----

2. all the seeds cannot grow

Lesson 4 ★ Writing

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:




wheat قمح


Damietta governorate
محافظة دمياط


nutrients
عناصر غذائية


rice أرز


tomato
ثمرة طماطم


potato
ثمرة بطاطس


guava
ثمرة جوافة


lemons
ليمون


grapes
عنب


fisherman صياد


farmer فلاح


sheep خروف


cow بقرة


goat معزة



thousand الف

1,000,000


million مليون


Domiati cheese جبنة دمياطى





Other words كلمات أخرى

land	الأرض
rich	غني
catch (fish)	يصطاد سمك
famous	مشهور
part	جزء
crops	محاصيل
less than	أقل من

Help your child learn about Damietta governorate. **ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن محافظة دمياط.**



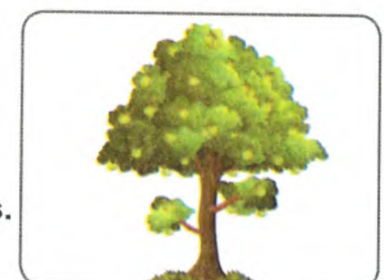
Study the following

1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
- الأرض فى محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.
2. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.
- يصطاد الصيادون الآف الاسماك من البحر.
3. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too.
- يعيش البقر والماعز والخراف فى محافظة دمياط أيضًا.
4. Domiati cheese is very famous.
- الجبنة الدمياطى مشهورة جدًا.
5. Life is good in Damietta.
- الحياة رائعة فى دمياط.

Food from Damietta

استمع إلى النص:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.
Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous.
About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!



1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

	True	False
1. Damietta has lots of food and animals.		
2. The farmers grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.		
3. The land in Damietta is not good for crops.		
4. There aren't many lemons and grapes in Damietta.		
5. Less than two million people live in Damietta.		

2 Read the text and join the sentence halves:

اقرأ النص واربط انصاف الجمل بنهايتها:

A	B
1 Damietta is famous	a. live in Damietta governorate.
2 The animals you see	b. tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, and guavas.
3 The farmers grow	c. for Domiati cheese.
4 About 1.5 million Egyptians	d. in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Damietta is a ....

   a street   b village   c governorate   d beach

2. The land is Damietta is rich in ....

   a stars   b birds   c fish   d nutrients

3. Domiati .... is very famous.

   a cheese   b sheep   c chicken   d chips

4. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.

   a Fishermen   b Farmers   c Teachers   d Mechanics

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - potatoes - grow - thousands - live

Damietta is a good place to live in. Farmers can ❶ .... many things there. They are rice, tomatoes and ❷ .... Fishermen catch ❸ .... of fish. You can eat Domiati cheese. It's very ❹ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: الشرقية (2024)

Ahmed Ibrahim is in grade four at a primary school. He has two brothers. He plays football with his brothers. They live in Damietta. His dad has a beautiful farm. His dad is a farmer. He grows rice, tomatoes, and potatoes. He raises chickens and cows to get milk. He makes delicious cheese. Ahmed and his brother catch fish in the sea. Ahmed has many friends. He loves his city.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed's dad is a ....

a fisherman b farmer c teacher d doctor

2. Ahmed's family live in ....

a Cairo b Giza c Damietta d Alexandria

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many brothers does Ahmed have?

----

4. What did Ahmed's dad grow on his farm?

----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- you can see animals in Damietta

2- life is good in Damietta

----

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Damietta governorate

grow - cheese

Review

Food and drink الطعام والشراب








tomato ثمرة طماطم

rice أرز

chicken دجاجة / لحم دجاج

potato ثمرة بطاطس

onion بصلة

mango ثمرة مانجو







banana موزة

grapes عنب

watermelon بطيخة

sugarcane قصب السكر

milk لبن

Meals الوجبات





breakfast الافطار

lunch الغداء

dinner العشاء

Healthy صـحـي







play football يلعب كرة القدم

play basketball يلعب كرة السلة

drink water يشرب مياه

exercise يتمرن

eat vegetables يأكل خضراوات

Unhealthy غير صـحـي





drink cola يشرب كولا

eat candy يأكل حلوى

play video games يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

Help your child revise Unit 1. **ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الاولى.**

A folktale from China قصة شعبية








emperor	palace	king	gardener	seeds	empty pot
امبراطور	قصر	ملك	بستاني	بذور	أصيص زرع فارغ

China	الصين	competition	مسابقة
honest	أمين		

Writing






Damietta governorate	guava	lemons	wheat
محافظة دمياط	جوافة	ليمون	قمح







fisherman صياد | farmer فلاح | sheep خروف | cow بقرة | goat معزة

Grammar قواعد لغوية

- نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أى انها تضيف للمعنى:

- I like fruit and vegetables.

- و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو أسمين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية:

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

- نقدم فى هذه الفقرة ارشادات تقرب بقدر الإمكان نطق الكلمات بشكل صحيح والتركيز على الأخطاء الشائعة فى النطق ويُفَضَّل سماع الكلمات من خاصية (QR code) الموجودة بالكتاب .

١ لنطق كلمة (rice) انطق الحرف (c) مثل حرف (s) لأنه جاء بعده حرف (e).

٢ لنطق كلمة (onion) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (o) الأول مثل نطق حرف (u) فى كلمة (bus) وانطق حرف (i) مثل نطق حرف (y) فى كلمة (yes) وحرف (o) الثانى مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة second .

٣ لنطق كلمة (special) انطق الحروف (cia) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية .

٤ لنطق كلمة (delicious) انطق الحروف (ci) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية .

٥ لنطق كلمة (Egyptian) انطق الحروف (tian) مثل حرف (شن) باللغة العربية .





Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

Egyptian farmers

1. Egyptian farmers are very important. They grow many crops. They keep a lot of animals. They can raise chickens on their farms.

Lesson 2

Being healthy

2. We should eat fruit and vegetables to be healthy. We should drink a lot of water. We should do a lot of sport. We shouldn't drink cola.

Lesson 4

Damietta governorate

3. I live in Damietta with my family. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and potatoes. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is famous. Life is good in Damietta.

Activity - Unit 1

Your favorite meal

4. My favorite meal is lunch. My mother cooks chicken and rice. I eat fruit like watermelons, bananas and grapes, too. They are healthy food.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dad is a .... (teacher - doctor - scientist)
2. The desert is very .... (warm - hot - cold)
3. Dad likes .... animals. (looking at - watching - feeding)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

vegetables - do - healthy - like

A : Do you like --- food?

B : Yes, I --- .

A : What healthy food do you -------------------------------------?

B : Fruit and --- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and answer the questions: أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a good farmer. He has a big farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's your father's job?

----

2. What does your father keep?

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. My father is a .... (farmer - doctor - fisherman)
4. My father's farm is .... (big - small - old)
5. My father raises .... (chickens - birds - ducks)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He plays football .... tennis.
   a but   b so   c and
2. Farmers .... chickens to get eggs and meat.
   a eat   b raise   c grow
3. Nabil washes the rice, ... he can't cook it.
   a for   b but   c so
4. We need .... to grow plants.
   a apples   b sugar   c seeds
5. Domiati cheese is very ....
   a tall   b wrong   c famous

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. her - Hoda - repainted - bike.

----

2. dead - The - were - seeds.

----

3. grow - in - We - rice - Egypt.

----

4. many - You - Egypt - can - in - crops - see.

----

5. was - and - Cheng - good - honest.

Activities on Unit 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I read a folktale from ....

a China b India c Italy d Japan

2. The emperor gave .... to Cheng.

a carrots b trees c plants d seeds

3. Cheng was an honest ....

a teacher b gardener c farmer d traveler

4. Cheng was the .... emperor.

a first b next c third d fourth

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers .... rice in Egypt.

a grow b play c visit d draw

2. We try to .... in the competition.

a lose b lie c win d grow

3. An emperor is someone who is like a ....

a teacher b king c farmer d nurse

4. He doesn't .... He is honest.

a die b lie c buy d fly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - catch - Life - grow - sell

Alexandria is a beautiful city. 1 .... is good there. The sea in Alexandria is 2 .... Fishermen come to the sea to 3 .... thousands of fish. Then, they 4 .... the fish at the market.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed Samy. I like chicken and mangoes. I like drinking sugarcane juice. My brother Magdy likes rice and potatoes. **We** go to school by bus. We do our homework at seven o'clock. Then, we play with my cousin Adham at eight o'clock. We have dinner at 9 o'clock in the evening.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**We**" refers to ....

   a Ahmed and Samy
   b Ahmed and Magdy
   c Ahmed and Adel
   d Ahmed and Adham

2. They have dinner at .... o'clock.

   a eight
   b nine
   c seven
   d ten

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do Ahmed and Magdy go to school?

   ----

4. Who likes chicken and mangoes?

   ----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She likes fruit .... (or) chocolate.
2. There .... (are) some rice.
3. I have candy .... (but) cola.
4. I like playing tennis, ... (and) I can't play well.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

we raise chickens in Egypt --

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your favorite meal

1- What's your favorite meal?
2- Who cooks it?



I discover myself

Desert Animals

حيوانات صحراوية



لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة * أنظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

2. Practice making comparisons.

- يتدرب الطالب على عمل مقارنات.

3. Listen to a short story.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب عن الفرق بين صوتى /p/ and /b/.

5. Describe two animals.

- يصف الطالب أثنين من الحيوانات.

6. Write a fact file.

- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.

7. Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبوستر.

Lesson 1 ★ Animals in Egypt









fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء




camel جمل



spider عنكبوت



eagle نسر / طائر العقاب



pelican* بجعة





snake ثعبان



crocodile تمساح



lizard سحلية



insect حشرة

Other words كلمات أخرى

What about.....?	ماذا عن........؟	yes / yeah	نعم
few	قليل	do a very important job	يقوم بعمل هام جدا
true	صحيح / حقيقي	OK	حسنًا

Help your child learn about desert animals. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

Adjectives صفات

huge	ضخم	cute	جميل
ugly	قبيح	dangerous	خطير
scary	مخيف / مرعب	helpful	مفيد
scarier	مخيف أكثر	important	هام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
control	يتحكم / يقيدعد	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يعتقد	thought
do	يفعل	did

Study the following

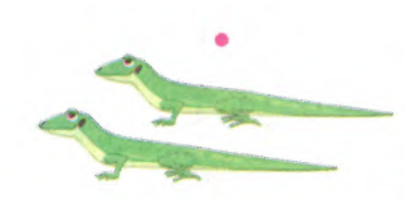
1. The crocodile is huge. — التمساح ضخم.
2. I think crocodiles are scary. — أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.
3. I think the spider is scarier. — اعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.
4. The spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.
   — العناكب مفيدة جدًا. إنها تأكل الحشرات ويحبها الفلاحون.
5. What about the snake and the crocodile? — ماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟
6. Animals are all important. — الحيوانات كلها مهمة.
7. Animals do a very important job. — الحيوانات تقوم بوظيفة هامة جدًا.
8. Which animals are dangerous? — أي من الحيوانات خطير؟

1 Match the words the pictures: صل الكلمات بالصور:

birds lizards insects





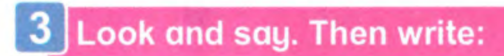




2 Listen and read: استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.
Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!
Tarek : Huge and scary!
Sara : I think the spider is scarier.
Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.
Sara : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?
Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.



3 Look and say. Then write: انظر وقل ثم اكتب:

fennec fox - crocodile - snake - spider - camel

1 
....

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

4 Listen again and answer: استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب:

Which animals do Mom, Tarek and Sara not talk about? ....

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

تغطى الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من ١٠ دول فى أفريقيا، إنها كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Crocodiles are .... animals.
   - a small
   - b scary
   - c short
   - d thin
2. Crocodiles live in the ....
   - a palace
   - b park
   - c desert
   - d river
3. Crocodiles eat ....
   - a grass and plants
   - b meat and fish
   - c fruit and vegetables
   - d seeds and beans
4. Crocodiles .... the number of small animals.
   - a stop
   - b think
   - c control
   - d make

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders are .... because they eat insects.
   - a careful
   - b helpful
   - c careless
   - d huge
2. Animals are all .... because they help us.
   - a scary
   - b huge
   - c important
   - d ill
3. .... animals are cute?
   - a Where
   - b Which
   - c Does
   - d When
4. Crocodiles are ...., but they are important.
   - a cute
   - b dangerous
   - c nice
   - d small

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

lizards - do - scary - fisherman - number

البحيرة - النوبارية (2023)

There are a lot of animals in our country. Some animals are ❶ ...., but they are important. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they ❷ .... a very important job.They eat insects and ❸ .... This controls the ❹ .... of these small animals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

We don't like spiders or crocodiles. They are scary animals, but they are important in our life. Crocodiles are dangerous and **huge**, but they do great jobs. They eat insects and small animals like lizards. This controls the numbers of the small animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... are dangerous.

   a birds b crocodiles c camels d pelicans

2. The underlined word "**huge**" means very ....

   a small b tall c big d short

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

- -

4. Which animals can crocodiles eat?

- -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

i think spiders are very helpful

أسيوط - الغنايم (2023)

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

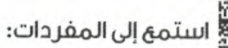
Animals in our country

helpful - dangerous

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

Lesson 2 ★ Amazing desert animals

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


flat feet أقدام مسطحة


camel جمل



fur* فرو


milk لبن



sand رمل


mouse فأر


horse حصان



elephant فيل

Adjectives صفات



Long Adjectives صفات طويلة (less / more)	
amazing	مدهش
delicious	لذيذ
beautiful	جميل
careful	حريص
perfect	رائع / ممتاز - مناسب جدا
dangerous	خطير

Short Adjectives صفات قصيرة (+ er or est)	
noisy	مزعج
strong	قوى
angry	غاضب
old	كبير السن
small	صغير
thin	رفيع
nice	جميل
long	طويل
large	كبير
fast	سريع

Other words كلمات أخرى

special way	طريقة خاصة	clothes	ملابس
fresh water	ماء عذب	kph	كيلو متر / ساعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cross	يعبر	crossed
carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يملك	had
make	يعمل	made



Study the following

1. Camels are beautiful, strong animals. - الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.
2. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.
   - إنها تساعدنا فى حمل الأشياء والناس عند عبور الصحراء.
3. Their milk is delicious. - لبنها لذيذ.
4. We can use their fur to make clothes. - يمكن استخدام فروها لعمل ملابس.
5. Camels are perfect for the desert. - الجمال ملائمة جدًا للعيش فى الصحراء.
6. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
   - الجمال لديها اقدام كبيرة ومسطحة تمكنها من السير على الرمال.
7. Camels can live without water for a long time.
   - يمكن أن تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.
8. Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.
   - الجمال مزعجة جدًا ويمكن أن تغضب.
9. Horses have large beautiful eyes. - الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.
10. Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. - الخيول تأكل الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.
11. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.
    - يمكن أن تعيش الخيول فى الصحراء ولكن تحتاج أن يعتنى بها الناس.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء.
- The mouse is small.

مقارنة شيئين

- يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتى:

1 الصفات القصيرة

- أولاً: يجب أن تعلم أن الصفات تنقسم إلى صفات طويلة وصفات قصيرة.
- مع الصفات القصيرة نضيف (er) آخر الصفة عند المقارنة:

اسم + than + er + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- A mouse is smaller than an elephant.

لاحظ

- يمكن حذف (than) و حذف آخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم فى جملة سابقة كالآتى:
- A rabbit is small. I think the mouse is smaller. ~~(than the rabbit)~~

لاحظ

- عند إضافة (er) للصفة:
- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

scary → scarier heavy → heavier

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger thin → thinner

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (r) فقط:

nice → nicer

2 الصفات الطويلة

- نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more:

beautiful → less / more beautiful

- أقل من less + صفة طويلة + than
- أكثر من more + صفة طويلة + than

اسم + than + صفة طويلة + more / less + اسم

- Eagles are more beautiful than insects.
- Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.
- Camels are more perfect for the desert than horses.

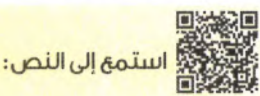
لاحظ

- لا تستخدم less / more مع الصفات القصيرة ولا تستخدم (er) مع الصفات الطويلة.

Help your child learn about comparisons. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المقارنة.



1 Read about camels and check your answers. What is surprising about camels? اقرأ عن الجمال وتأكد من إجابتك. ما الشئ المدهش عن الجمال؟



Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals.
They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.
Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!
Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why:

1 
Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

2 
Camels can live without water for a long time.

3 
Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

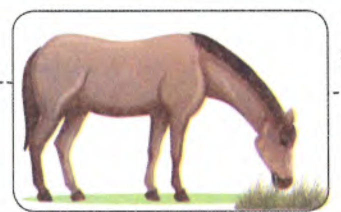
- But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

2 Look at the fact file and read the differences between horses and camels. انظر إلى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفرق بين الخيول والجمال.

	Horse	Camel
How tall is it?	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	25 - 30 years	40 years



Horses have large, beautiful eyes.





Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

Help your child read facts about camels and horses ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حقائق عن الجمال والخيول.

3 Read and answer (True) or (False):
اقرأ واجب بـ (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Horses are slower than camels.		
2 Camels are taller than horses.		
3 Horses are heavier than camels.		
4 Camels live longer than horses.		

4 Look and complete the table:
انظر وأكمل الجدول:

tall	taller
....	heavier
fast	....
....	bigger
beautiful	more ....
delicious	.... delicious
....	shorter

5 Write sentences to compare these animals:
اكتب جمل للمقارنة بين الحيوانات:

1. (snake / fox / dangerous)

   A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

2. (elephant / hippo / big) ------------------------------
3. (horse / giraffe / tall) ------------------------------
4. (crocodile / fish / dangerous) ------------------------------
5. (camel / fennec fox / small) ------------------------------
6. (ice cream / butter / delicious) ------------------------------



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Camels are ....

a weak　b strong　c small　d young

2. Camels can carry people and things to cross the ....

a river　b lake　c sea　d desert

3. Camels' .... is very delicious.

a fur　b milk　c water　d skin

4. We can use their fur to make ....

a clothes　b food　c salad　d koshari

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. **A:** How .... does it live?　**B:** 40 years.

a tall　b many　c long　d often

2. Camels are .... for the desert.

a difficult　b easy　c perfect　d kind

3. Camels have large .... feet.　القليوبية - الخصوص (2024)

a flat　b tall　c short　d noisy

4. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.

a meat　b fish　c chicken　d grass

Help your child deal with such questions.　ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون (2024)

carry - special - feet - fur - feathers

Camels are amazing animals. They have flat ❶ ...., so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have ❷ .... ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their ❸ .... to make clothes. Camels can help us to ❹............................. things and people.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Camels are .... (**tall**) than horses.
2. The lion is stronger .... (**then**) the mouse.
3. Camels are .... (**perfect**) for the desert than horses.
4. Ice cream is .... (**delicious**) than butter.
5. A snake is............................. (**dangerous**) than a fox.
6. Camels are amazing, ... (**so**) they can get angry.
7. Horses are .... (**fastest**) than camels.
8. The horse is shorter .... (**that**) the camel.
9. Crocodiles are .... (**many**) dangerous than the giraffes.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

camels are perfect for the desert

Lesson 3 ★ The pelican and the bear ★ Pronunciation and Math




استمع إلى المفردات:


pelican بجعة


hungry جوعان


paw* كف الحيوان


bear* دب


claw* مخلب الحيوان


beak منقار


juicy fish سمكة عصيرية (طرية)


angry غضبان

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me!	اعذرني!	interesting	شيق
fun	متعة	boring	ممل
surprised	مندهش	both	كلاهم
scared	خائف	sadly	بحزن

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at
reach	يصل إلى	reached
open	يفتح	opened
lift	يرفع	lifted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يمتلك	had
feel	يشعر	felt
think	يعتقد	thought
take	يأخذ	took
say	يقول	said

Study the following

1. The bear reaches for the fish. – يصل الدب إلى السمكة.
2. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. – إنه جاهز ليأخذ السمكة من الماء.
3. The bear is surprised and angry. – الدب مندهش وغضبان.
4. The pelican looks scared. – البجعة تبدو خائفة.
5. The bear is stronger than the pelican. – الدب أقوى من البجعة.
6. How do you feel, pelican? – كيف تشعرى أيتها البجعة؟
7. But you are hungrier than me. – لكن أنت جائعة أكثر منى.
8. You are kinder than all the other bears. – أنت عطوف أكثر من كل الدببة الأخرى.
9. Which animal is hungrier? – أى حيوان اكثر جوعًا؟

1 Look at the pictures and say: انظر إلى الصور وقل:

Describe the bear. صف الدب

Describe the pelican. صف البجعة

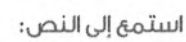

/p/ pelican


/b/ bear

2 Read and listen. Where is the fish at the end of the story:

اقرأ واستمع. أين السمكة فى نهاية القصة؟

The Pelican and the Bear

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw.

The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."

The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

paw

claw

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican.

"How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish. "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears!"



3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

اعمل مع زميلك واسأل واجب:

1. Which animal reaches for the fish first?
١- ما الحيوان الذى وصل للسمكة أولاً؟
2. Which animal is angry?
٢- ما الحيوان الغاضب؟
3. Which animal is hungrier?
٣- أى حيوان جائع أكثر؟
4. How do you think the bear feels at the end of the story?
٤- كيف تعتقد ما شعر به الدب فى آخر القصة؟

Help your child read the story and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

Pronunciation

★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل

/p/ & /b/

ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق حرفى (/b/) و (/p/) والفرق بينهما حيث فى حرف (/p/) نضغط على الشفتين بقوة ويندفع الهواء من الفم عند نطق الحرف ولكن فى حرف (/b/) لا نضغط على الشفتين مع عدم اندفاع هواء من الفم حيث يشبه حرف (ب) فى اللغة العربية :


استمع إلى المفردات:





Help your child know the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الصوتين /b/ و /p/.



Fractions الكسور

- الكسر يتكون من جزئين الجزء العلوي يسمى البسط والجزء السفلي يسمى المقام ويوضع بينهما شرطة الكسر:

numerator البسط → $\frac{1}{2}$ ← denominator المقام

- يمكن أن نستخدم الكسور للتعبير عن عدد صحيح وغير صحيح فمثلاً $\frac{4}{2}$ هو كسر يمثل الرقم (2) وهو عدد صحيح و $\frac{1}{2}$ يمثل (0.5) وهو عدد غير صحيح.

ولاحظ التالي:



هنا البيتزا غير مقسمة لذلك فإن قيمتها بالكسور = $\frac{1}{1}$



هنا البيتزا مقسمة إلى أربع أجزاء $\frac{4}{4} = 1$



هنا أخذنا جزء وتبقى ثلاثة أجزاء $\frac{4-1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$



هنا أخذنا جزئين وتبقى جزئين $\frac{4-2}{4} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$



هنا أخذنا ثلاثة أجزاء وتبقى جزء $\frac{4-3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$

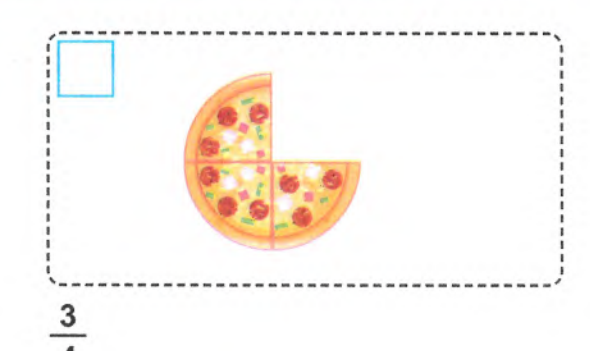
Help your child learn about fractions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور.



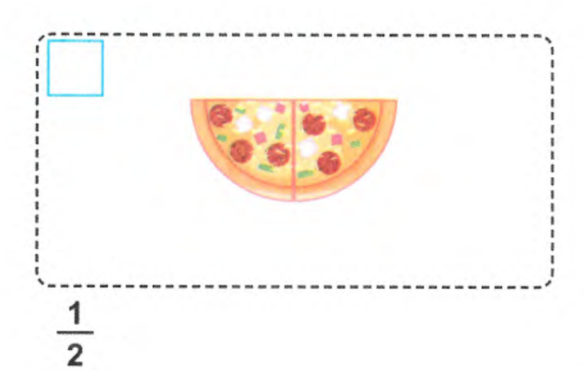
4 Look and put in descending order: انظر ورتب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)



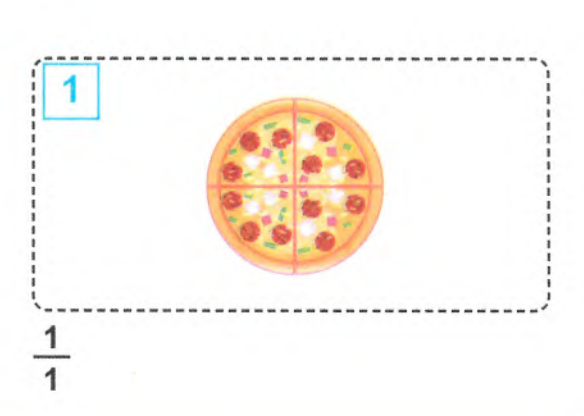
$\frac{1}{4}$



$\frac{3}{4}$



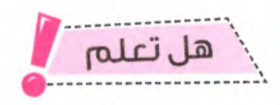
$\frac{1}{2}$



$\frac{1}{1}$

Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.



➤ نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية. فعلى سبيل المثال هذه وصفة بسيطة لعمل مخفوق اللبن «ميلك شيك» : $\frac{1}{2}$ كوب لبن، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب موز، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب آيس كريم بالفانيليا.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A pear is a kind of ....

a animals b birds c fruit d lizards

2. The .... is a bird.

a pelican b bear c fox d camel

3. The pelican opens its big .... to eat the fish.

a claw b beak c paw d feather

4. The bear uses its .... to catch the fish.

a beak b paw c feather d stomach

5. Milkshake is a kind of.................................

a soup b juice c rice d pizza

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

gave - wanted - hungry - saw - felt

One day, a pelican saw a big fish in the river. He 1 .... to eat it. But the pelican 2 .... a bear. The bear was 3 .... and wanted to eat the fish, too. The bear was kind. He 4 .... the fish to the pelican.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I like birds a lot. I can see them every day. They have wings to fly. They have beaks to eat food. Birds have legs and tails. Some birds are big and others are small. My favorite bird is the pelican. It looks beautiful. It has a long beak. It eats small fish. It lives near the rivers. We can see pelicans in the zoo.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The pelican eats small ....

   a lizards b insects c fish d birds

2. The pelican has a long ....

   a ear b nose c tail d beak

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does the pelican live?

----

4. How can birds fly?

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

is the pelican really scared

----

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The pelican and the bear مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

hungry - fish

Lessons 4&5 ★ Animal fact file

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


Sahara Desert
الصحراء الكبرى


grass
عشب / حشائش


rhim gazelle*
غزال الريم


leaves
أوراق الشجر


plants
نباتات


yellow-white coat
صوف أصفر وأبيض


fennec fox
ثعلب الصحراء


horns قرون


dolphin
دولفين


mice فئران

Other words كلمات أخرى



North Africa	شمال إفريقيا	foxes	ثعالب
centimeters	سنتيمترات	around	حول
kilogram	كيلو جرام	really	بالفعل
during	أثناء	thick fur	فرو سميك
heat	حرارة	warm	دافئ

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Where.......?	أين.....؟	What colors....?	ما لون .....؟
How heavy.....?	كم وزن.....؟	How tall.....? ↑	كم طول (رأسى).....؟
Why.....?	لماذا.....؟	How long..........? →	كم طول (أفقى).....؟
What..........?	ما / ماذا.....؟		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look (beautiful)	يبدو (جميل)	looked (beautiful)
protect	يحمي	protected
need	يحتاج	needed
walk	يمشى	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
keep	يحافظ علي	kept
lose	يفقد	lost
hear	يسمع	heard



Study the following

1. **Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.** – تبدو غزلان الريم جميل جدًا.
2. **They have big ears and long horns.** – لديهم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.
3. **They have yellow, white coats which, protect them from the sun.** – لديهم صوف أبيض وأصفر ليحميهم من الشمس.
4. **The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.** – يعيش ثعلب الصحراء فى صحراء شمال أفريقيا.
5. **It's smaller than other foxes.** – أنه أصغر من الثعالب الآخرى.
6. **The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.** – يحتاج ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة ليسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.
7. **The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.** – يفقد ثعلب الصحراء الحرارة من أذنيه.
8. **The fennec fox's fur keeps it warm.** – يحافظ فرو ثعلب الصحراء على دفئه.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس بعض الحقائق عن الحيوانات فى الصحراء، لذلك يجب معرفة الأسئلة التى من خلالها نتعرف على هذه الحيوانات.

1 Where does it live? — أين يعيش؟

للإجابة: In + المكان.

Where does the fennec fox live?

In the deserts of North Africa.

2 How tall is it? — كم يبلغ طوله «رأسى»؟

.......centimeters.

3 What does it eat? — ماذا يأكل؟

Insects, small lizards and mice.

4 Why does the fennec fox have big ears? — لماذا لدى ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة؟

So it can hear small animals and insects.

5 How heavy is a rhim gazelle? — كم وزنه....؟

About / Around......... kilogram(s).

6 How long is it? — كم طوله «أفقى»......؟

.... meters / centimeters.

7 How long does it live? — كم المدة التى يعيشها؟

Around / About .... years.

Animal fact file:


استمع إلى النص:

Rhim gazelle



Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

1 Read the text quickly and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص سريعًا وأجب صح أو خطأ:

	True	False
1 Rhim gazelles live near the sea.		
2 Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.		
3 Rhim gazelles have short horns.		
4 Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.		
5 Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years.		

2 Do some research and write what you learned: قم بعمل بحث واكتب ما تعلمته:

K	W	L
What I Know ما أعرفه	What I Want to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه	What I Learned ما تعلمته
Dolphins are not dangerous. They are not fish.		

A poster about an Egyptian desert animal

بوستر عن حيوان صحراوي مصري

3 Work in groups. Think and research: اعمل في مجموعات. فكر وابحث:

- Find an Egyptian desert animal. فكر في حيوان صحراوي مصري.

➤ Where does it live? أين يعيش؟

➤ What does it eat? ماذا يأكل؟

➤ Why is it special? لماذا هو مميز؟

4 Read and do: اقرأ وافعل:

1. Draw or find some pictures you can use.
2. Make your poster.

The fennec fox:


استمع إلى النص:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox .... heat from its ears.

   a looks   b loses   c walks   d keeps

2. **A:** How .... is the rhim gazelle? **B:** About 20 - 30 kg.

   a long   b tall   c heavy   d high

3. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.

   a mouth   b fur   c beak   d wing

4. Rhim gazelles have coats which .... them from the sun.

   a see   b run   c protect   d drink

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط (2024)

heat - hooves - insects - foxes - ears

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other ❶ .... Its ❷ .... are big, really big. The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear ❸ .... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses ❹ .... from its ears.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many beautiful animals in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. They look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat.

Rhim gazelles have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a rhim gazelles b fennec fox

   c plants d the Sahara Desert

2. The word "..............................." means to keep them safe.

   a look b protect c live d leave

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

- -

4. Why are the yellow-white coats useful to rhim gazelles?

- -

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how long does a rhim gazelle live

- -

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Rhim gazelles

beautiful - horns

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Animals, birds and insects حيوانات وطيور وحشرات



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



lizard سحلية



spider عنكبوت



eagle طائر العقاب



elephant فيل



dolphin دولفين



crocodile تمساح



pelican بجعة



camel جمل



rhim gazelle غزال الريم



snake ثعبان



mouse فأر



horse حصان

Animals body parts أجزاء جسم الحيوان



beak منقار



fur فرو



horns قرون



flat feet أقدام مسطحة



eye عين

Help your child revise Unit 2. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

A short story قصة قصيرة


bear
دب


juicy fish
سمكة عصيرية


claw
مخلب


paw
كف حيوان

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء.

- The crocodile is scary.

1 أولاً: الصفات القصيرة

- يمكن أيضًا أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتى:

1 الصفات القصيرة

- نضيف (er) آخر الصفة:

اسم + صفة قصيرة + er + than + اسم

- The spider is **scarier than** the crocodile.

2 ثانيًا: الصفات الطويلة

2 الصفات الطويلة

- لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند المقارنة.

- نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more.

beautiful → **less / more** beautiful

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are **more beautiful than** insects.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (pelican) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (second) .

٢ لنطق كلمة (fur) انطق حرفى (ur) مثل نطق حرفى (ir) فى كلمة (girl).

٣ انطق كلمة (bear) وكلمة (pear) مثل نطق كلمة (care) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

٤ انطق كلمة (claw) وكلمة (paw) مثل نطق كلمة (draw) مع اختلاف أول حرفين.

٥ انطق كلمة (pea) مثل نطق كلمة (bee) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

٦ فى كلمة (rhim gazelle) انطق الجزء (rhim) مثل كلمة (him) مع عدم نطق حرف (h) لانه (silent) أي انها تنطق (rim) وانطق (gazelle) بحيث ينطق (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e) الاخير حيث ينطق آخر مقطع (zelle) مثل (zel).



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

Animals in our country

1 There are many animals in our country. For example, spiders are helpful, they eat insects. Snakes are dangerous, but they eat insects and lizards. These animals. are important.

Lesson 3

The pelican and the bear

2 There were a bear and a pelican. They both wanted to eat a fish in the river. But the bear was kinder and gave the fish to the pelican.

Lessons 4 - 5

Rhim gazelles

3 Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water. They can run very fast.

Activity - Unit 2

The fennec fox

4 The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects and lizards. Its thick fur keeps it warm at night.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Horses are very .... (slow - fast - weak)
2. Horses can live up to .... years. (thirty - forty - fifty)
3. Horses eat .... (fruit - grass - corn)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

live - lakes - picture - pelican

A : Look at this ------------------------------. What is this?

B : This is a ------------------------------.

A : Where does it ------------------------------?

B : It lives in ------------------------------

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I live in a small town. My school is next to a big park. My father is a teacher. He is very kind. He teaches English. Students like him very much.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where is your school? ------------------------------
2. What does your father teach? ------------------------------

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. I live in a .... town. (big - small - tall)
4. My father is a .... (vet - doctor - teacher)
5. My father is very .... (unkind - kind - bad)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A snake is more .... than a fox.

a cute b slow c dangerous

2. A mouse is .... than an elephant.

a smaller b very small c smallest

3. Spiders eat ....

a ice cream b soup c insects

4. **A:** .... does the fennec fox live? **B:** In the desert.

a When b Where c Why

5. Camels have large .... feet.

a fur b flat c noisy

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat - What - it - does?

- -

2. hungry - are - They - very.

- -

3. eats - small - The pelican - fish.

- -

4. to - need - look after - Horses - people - them.

- -

5. do - a very - Animals - job - important.

- -

Activities on Unit 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My uncle has horses in his ....

   a house   b garden   c school   d field

2. Horses have large ....

   a ears   b wings   c eyes   d tails

3. Horses can live for .... years.

   a sixty   b forty   c thirty   d fifty

4. Horses need .... to look after them.

   a children   b people   c animals   d birds

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox has .... ears.

   a big   b small   c little   d tiny

2. Crocodiles are.................................. This means they are very big.

   a small   b little   c huge   d funny

3. Camels can live .... water for a long time.

   a with   b without   c in   d for

4. I want to eat a ....

   a bear   b pear   c pin   d beak

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fresh - fast - eyes - shorter - bad

Horses are amazing animals. They are very 1 .... They have beautiful big 2 .... They eat grass and they like to drink 3 .... water. They are 4 .... than camels.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hani. My uncle lives in Fayoum. He has a big farm. He has a lot of animals. I can see cows, hens, goats and horses on the farm. I like horses very much. They aren't dangerous. They are strong animals. I like to feed **them**. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can carry heavy things. They are useful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....

a goats | b cows | c horses | d hens

2. Horses are ....

a dangerous | b useful | c ugly | d scary

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hani's uncle live? ------------------------------

4. What does Hani's uncle have on the farm? ------------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You are .... (more kind) than any other bears.
2. Snakes are .... (many) dangerous than lizards.
3. Are eagles .... (beautiful) than insects?
4. Camels are taller .... (then) horses.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where does a camel live

----

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The fennec fox

ears - fur

السويس - جبل عتاقة (2023)



I discover myself

Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة * انظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.

2. Practice making sentences with the superlative.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بإستخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا.

3. Read, listen to, and understand a short story.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة ويفهمها.

4. Learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الاصوات الساكنة /sl/ و /sw/.

5. Write the life cycle of a sunflower.

- يكتب الطالب عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

6. Research and write a short report.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويكتب تقرير قصير.

Lesson 1 ★ Plants and seeds

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

leaf ورقة شجر

seed بذرة

soil تربة

The germination process
عملية الإنبات

flower وردة / زهرة

shoot* فسيلة / نبتة

root جذر النبات

water يروى

Other words كلمات أخرى

balcony*	بلكونة	inside	بالداخل
is called	يسمى	awesome*	رائع
sunlight	ضوء الشمس		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
die	يموت	died
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
find	يجد	found
become	يصبح	became

Help your child learn about the germination process. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن عملية الانبات.





Study the following

1. Why are the tomatoes green? — لماذا تكون الطماطم خضراء؟
2. Tomatoes are green before they are red. — تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تكون حمراء.
3. How do we grow new tomatoes? — كيف نزرع ثمار طماطم جديدة؟
4. Tomatoes have seeds inside. — يوجد بذور داخل الطماطم.
5. We plant a seed and the plant grows. — نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات.
6. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.
   — نروى النبات كل يوم وينمو الجذر تحت التربة.
7. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.
   — ينمو النبات ليصبح زهور وتصبح الزهور فاكهة الطماطم.

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Dad : Come and look!

Seleem : What is it, Dad?

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the **balcony**! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

Seleem : How do we grow new tomatoes?

Dad : Tomatoes have **seeds** inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called **germination**. We **water** the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

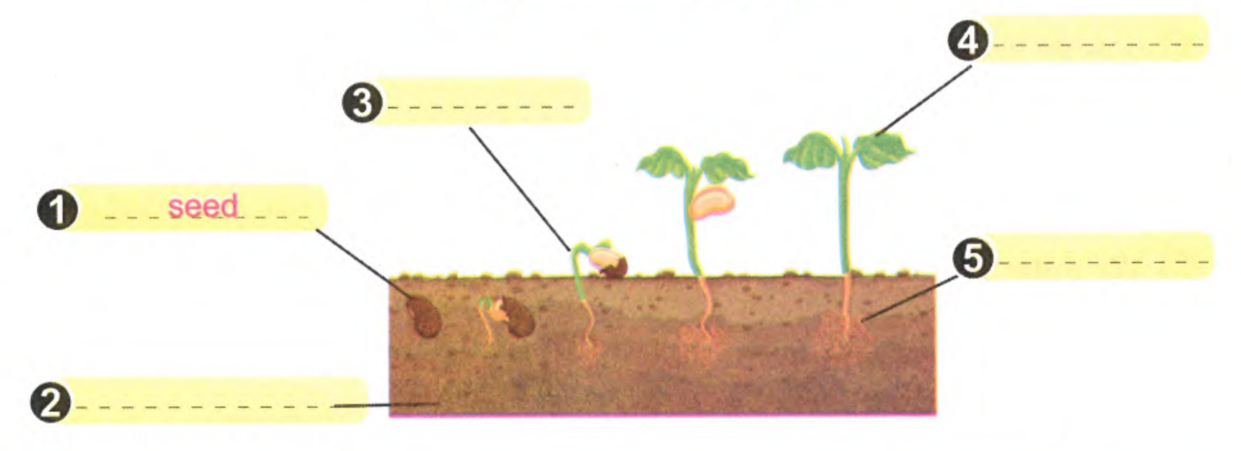
Seleem : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

2 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل:

leaf - roots - seed - shoot - soil

The germination process



3 Listen and check: استمع وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص الآتى وتأكد من خطوات عملية الإنبات فى التمرين رقم ٢ :





استمع إلى النص:

The Germination process

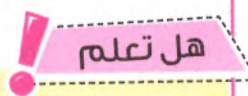
We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (الكامل) plant grows leaves and flowers.



Did you know?

Did you know that we eat this cacao seed?

Chocolate comes from this plant.



هل تعلم أننا نأكل بذور الكاكاو؟ حيث تأتي الشيكولاتة من هذا النبات.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.

   a yellow b green c brown d pink

2. Tomatoes have .... inside.

   a seeds b leaves c trees d soil

3. We can .... the seeds and grow new tomatoes.

   a cross b take c eat d walk

4. Tomatoes need .... to grow.

   a rice b food c water d tea

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The roots grow .... the soil.

   a on b above c under d of

2. We put the seeds in the ....

   a leaf b soil c shoot d flower

3. Mom likes to .... flowers on the balcony.

   a raise b feed c grow d eat

4. I .... the flowers every day.

   a become b cook c drink d water

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

soil - watered - roots - seeds - became

I like planting trees on our balcony. My father helps me. Yesterday, I put ❶ .... of tomatoes in a pot. I put soil in the pot. I ❷ .... the seeds and the ❸ .... grew under the soil. The plant grew flowers and the flowers ❹ .... tomato fruit.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

بنى سويف - ادارة بنى سويف (2024)

My name is Ahmed. I'm in grade four. At school, our teacher told us how to grow tomatoes. First, you plant the tomatoes seeds in the soil and water them every day. The plant needs water and sunlight to grow. After that, the seeds grow roots under the soil. Then, the shoot grows above the soil. Then, the plant grows above the soil. Finally, the plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomatoes. My tomatoes are very delicious.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is in grade ....

a one b two c three d four

2. The seeds grow .... under the soil

a flowers b grapes c roots d shoot

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.

---

4. What does the plant need to grow?

---

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how do we grow new tomatoes

---

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

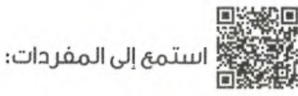
The Germination process

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

seeds - roots

Lesson 2 ★ Plants in Egypt






lotus flower زهرة اللوتس


tamarisk نبات الاثل


bean plant نبات الفول

Plants
نباتات


reed* نبات القصب (البوص)






acacia* شجرة السنط


daisy* زهرة الاقحوان


sunflower
دوار (عباد) الشمس


rose وردة


orange tree شجرة البرتقال

Plant habitats
بيئة أو موطن النباتات


agricultural* habitat
بيئة زراعية




desert habitat* بيئة صحراوية


rivers and lakes
انهار وبحيرات

Help your child learn about plant habitats. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن موطن النباتات.

Other words كلمات أخرى

maize	ذرة	eggplant	ثمرة باذنجان
beetle	خنفسة	butterfly	فراشة
suitcase	حقيبة سفر		



Study the following

1. **Farmers grow food for us to eat.**
– يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنأكله.
2. **Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.**
– تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى كثير من الماء.
3. **There is not much rain in the desert.**
– لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار فى الصحراء.
4. **Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.**
– لا تحتاج النباتات التى تعيش فى الصحراء إلى الكثير من الماء.
5. **How big is the flower?**
– كم حجم الزهرة؟
6. **A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.**
بيئة الحيوان أو النبات هي مكان تعيش فيه الكائنات الحية وتنمو.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

- درسنا فى الوحدة السابقة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين؛
- ندرس فى هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص و مجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة أشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

- اذا كانت الصفة قصيرة نضع قبلها (the) وفى أخرها (est):

الاسم + the + صفة قصيرة + est

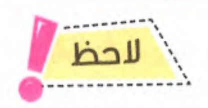
- The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- Ahmed is tall. Fatma is taller than Ahmed. Karma is taller than Fatma.
- Karma is the tallest.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most الاكثر/ the least الاقل + صفة طويلة.

- The rose is the most beautiful flower.
- The sunflower is the least beautiful flower.

Help your child learn about superlative adjectives. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مقارنة الصفات العليا.



لاحظ

اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest):

heavy → heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (est):

big → biggest thin → thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice → nicest

صفات قصيرة	صفات طويلة
tall	beautiful
big	perfect
nice	delicious

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس الأماكن التى تنمو بها النباتات وما نوع النباتات التى تنمو فى كل منطقة :

River or lake نهر أو بحيرة	Agricultural بيئة زراعية	Desert صحراء
1- lotus flower زهرة اللوتس	1- bean plant نبات الفول	1- tamarisk نبات الاثل
2- reed نبات البوص	2- orange tree شجرة البرتقال	2- acacia شجرة السنط

1 Read about plant habitats and label the photos:

أقرأ عن موطن النباتات وضع اسم كل موطن للنباتات تحت الصورة المناسبة :

◉ **A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.**


استمع إلى النص:



Desert habitat

2

....

3

....

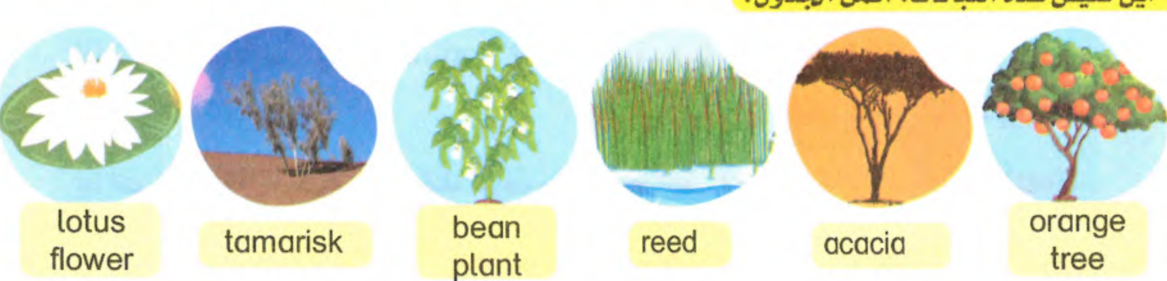
◉ **Agricultural habitat**
Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

◉ **Rivers and lakes**
Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

◉ **Desert habitat**
There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

2 Where do these plants live? Complete the table:

أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟ اكمل الجدول:



River or lake	Agricultural	Desert
1- lotus flower	3-	5- ....
2-	4-	6- ....

3 Look at the fact file and read the differences between the flowers:

أنظر الى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفروق بين الزهور:

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

4 Read and answer T (True) or F (False):

أقرأ واجب بنعم أو لا:

	True	False
1 The rose is smaller than the daisy.		
2 The sunflower is taller than the daisy.		
3 The sunflower is the biggest flower.		
4 The rose lives the longest.		
5 The daisy is the heaviest.		

5 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals:

اكتب الجمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة للنباتات والحيوانات (استخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل كما فى المثال):

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest animal.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

----

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

----

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Acacia grows in the .... habitat. It doesn't need much water.

a desert b lake c river d sea

2. A: How .... does a rose live? B: Around 10 days.

a after b many c long d tall

3. A: How .... is the sunflower? B: Around 200g.

a tall b heavy c big d far

4. Plants in the desert habitat don't need a lot of ....

a sugar b water c sand d trees

5. A .... is a place where living things live and grow.

a space b sun c habitat d sky

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rain - desert - grow - lakes - seeds

There are different plant habitats in our world. They are agricultural, rivers and lakes and ❶ .... habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers ❷ .... food for us. In the desert, there isn't much ❸ .... and plants don't need much water. Plants near the river and ❹ .... need a lot of water.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The red flower is the .... (**more**) beautiful. بنى سويف - إدارة ببا (2024)

2. Ahmed is the .... (**tall**) boy in our class. القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون (2024)

3. The elephant is the.............................. (**bigger**) animal. القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. The rose is the .... (nice) flower.

5. The sunflower is .... (than) biggest flower.

6. The daisy is the .... (heavier) .

7. A snake is .... (smallest) than a fox.

8. A lion is the .... (strong) animal.

9. I think the eggplant is the .... (more) delicious plant.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how heavy is the daisy

----

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Plants

rose - beautiful

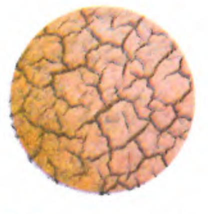
Lesson 3 ★ A short story ★ Math - Pronunciation




استمع إلى المفردات:


farm مزرعة


land أرض


dry جاف


noise ضوضاء




liter لتر



million* مليون


rainwater مياه الأمطار



billion* مليار

Other words كلمات أخرى

the United States	الولايات المتحدة	grandparents	اجداد
polluted air	هواء ملوث	life	الحياة
work hard	يعمل بجد	proud of	فخور بـ
on the farm	فى المزرعة		

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
decide	يقرر	decided
live	يعيش	lived
plant	يزرع	planted
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
grow	يزرع	grew
take	يأخذ	took
give	يعطي	gave

Describe a story صف القصة

boring	ممل	OK	جيد
interesting	شيق	I don't understand.	لم افهم.

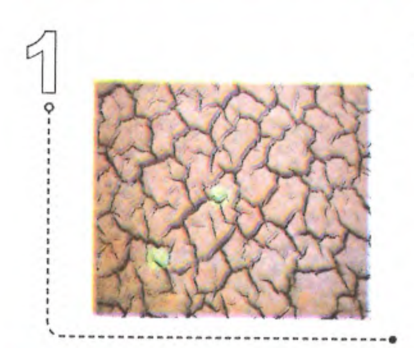


Study the following

1. **The land was very dry.** - كانت الأرض جافة جدًا.
2. **They didn't like the polluted air and the noise.** - لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضوضاء.
3. **They decided to buy some land.** - قرروا أن يشتروا بعض من الأرض.
4. **They used rainwater to water the seeds.** - استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور.
5. **They needed about a billion liters of water a year.** - احتاجوا حوالي مليار لتر من المياه في السنة.
6. **They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents.** - هم فخورين جدًا بأجداد لوكس.

1 Look at the photos. What can you see? What do you think the story is about?

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا ترى؟ وفى رأيك ما الموضوع الذى تدور حوله القصة؟

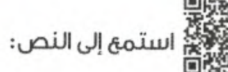
1


2


3


2 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the **United States** [1]. It is a very **special farm** [2]. Forty years ago, the land was very **dry**[3]. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air**[4] and the **noise**[5]. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

At first,[6] life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted **millions**[7] of seeds. They used **rainwater**[8] to water the seeds. They needed about **a billion**[9] liters of water a year.

They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very **proud**[10] of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

Arabic Meaning

١- الولايات المتحدة
٢- مزرعة خاصة
٣- جاف
٤- هواء ملوث
٥- ضوضاء
٦- فى البداية
٧- ملايين
٨- مياه الامطار
٩- مليار
١٠- فخور

Help your child read a short story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة قصيرة.

CLIL: MATH

تعرف على الارقام حتى المليار:

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred مائة	a thousand الف	ten thousand عشرة الاف	a hundred thousand مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million مليون	a hundred million مائة مليون	a billion مليار

Place value

القيمة المكانية

ones آحاد	tens عشرات	hundreds مئات
thousands ألوف	ten thousands عشرات الآلوف	hundred thousands مئات الآلوف

millions ملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	hundred millions مئات الملايين	billions مليارات

لاحظ

A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000

المليار يساوي ألف مليون.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس القيمة المكانية للأعداد. حيث هناك فرق بين قيمة العدد والقيمة المكانية.
- فمثلاً العدد (5) قيمته المكانية فى الرقم (150) تساوى (50) والعدد (1) قيمته (100).
- ادرس الآتى:

ones آحاد	→	[1-9]
tens عشرات	→	[10-99]
hundreds مئات	→	[100-999]
thousands آلوف	→	[1000-9,999]
ten thousands عشرات الآلوف	→	[10,000-99,999]
hundred thousands مئات الآلوف	→	[100,000-999,999]
millions الملايين	→	[1,000,000-9,999,999]
ten millions عشرات الملايين	→	[10,000,000-99,999,999]
hundred millions مئات الملايين	→	[100,000,000-999,999,999]
billions مليارات	→	[1,000,000,000]

- Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

1 Look and label the diagram with the correct numbers:

انظر وضع الكلمات فى المكان الصحيح:

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

Large numbers up to billions

.... ten millions ....

ones hundreds ten thousands millions ....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A		B
1 1,000,000,000		a. a thousand
2 100,000,000		b. ten thousand
3 1,000		c. a billion
4 100,000		d. a hundred million
5 10,000		e. a hundred thousand



Pronunciation

★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل


استمع إلى المفردات:



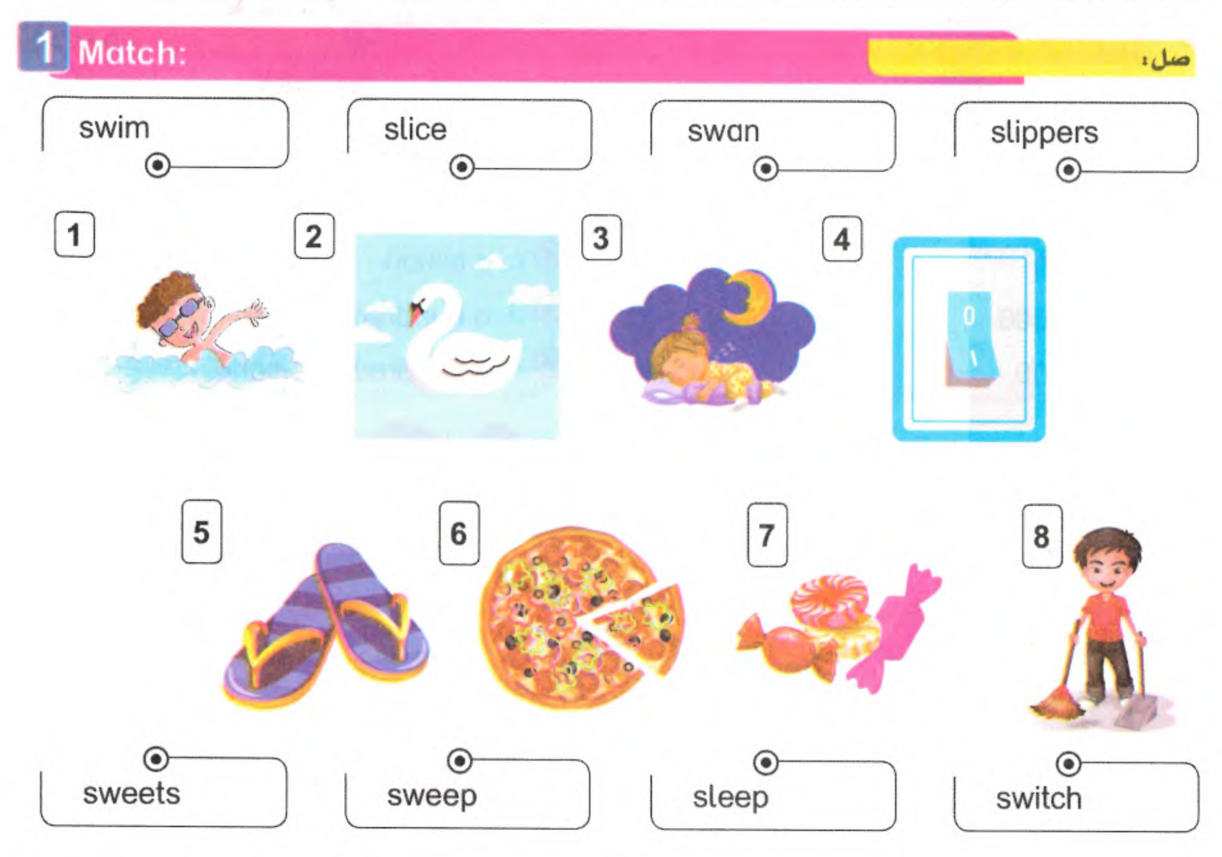


لاحظ! لاحظ نضيف اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الأفعال أو الأسماء لتكوين صفات لتعنى (مليء بـ):

Noun اسم / Verb فعل		Adjective صفة	
color	لون	colorful	زاهي / كثير الألوان
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	يعتني بـ	careful	حريص
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد

1 Match:

صل:



2 We use the suffix -ful at the end of many adjectives. It means full of. Find the words in the box. Check the meaning of the words in a dictionary:

نستخدم اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الصفات لتعنى (ملىء بـ) اوجد كلمات فى المربع الآتى. تأكد من معانى الكلمات فى القاموس:

- beautiful
- careful
- colorful
- helpful
- useful

s	l	i	h	e	p	y	u	c	m
c	a	r	e	f	u	l	i	o	w
e	s	t	l	r	g	b	w	l	h
d	w	s	p	a	n	r	t	o	t
u	s	e	f	u	l	d	u	r	d
e	h	i	u	s	w	i	t	f	h
u	p	m	l	n	g	e	o	u	b
b	e	a	u	t	i	f	u	l	e



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My sister is .... the floor.

a swimming b sweeping c sleeping d eating

2. Farmers grow many .... like oranges and lemons.

a drinks b vegetables c fruits d animals

3. The.............................. are swimming in the river.

a swans b sweets c slippers d shoes

4. Forty years ago, the land was very .... There were no farms.

a good b dry c excited d funny

5. They wanted a billion .... of water every year.

a kilos b liters c centimeters d grams

6. The farmers use .... to water the farm.

a soil b roots c rainwater d leaves

7. I don't like the .... air in the city, so I will live in the village.

a fresh b polluted c good d beautiful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية - إدارة أجا (2024)

green - billion - rainwater - life - fruits

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many ❶ .... They used ❷ .... to water the plants. They needed about a ❸ .... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land ❹ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandparents had a farm in Giza. They bought it twenty years ago. They wanted to live in the village because the city was very noisy.They planted many kinds of fruits and vegetables. They kept many animals like cows, goats and sheep.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The grandparents bought the farm .... years ago.

a 10 b 20 c 30 d 25

2. The farm was in ....

a Cairo b Giza c Luxor d Aswan

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they want to live in the village?

----

4. What animals did they keep on the farm?

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

do you want a slice of pizza

----

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your uncle's farm

1- Where is your uncle's farm?
2- What does your uncle grow?

Lessons 4&5 Life cycle of a sunflower




استمع إلى المفردات:


root جذر


seed بذرة


soil تربة

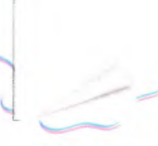

shoot نبتة


sunflower دوار(عباد) الشمس


process عملية

papyrus* البردى


Nile Delta
دلتا النيل


paper
ورق


basket
سلة


sandals
صندل


leaves
ورق الشجر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
face	يواجه	faced
germinate	ينبت	germinated
die	يموت	died
drop	يرمى / يلقى	dropped
start	يبدأ	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
grow	ينمو	grew
begin	يبدأ	began

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

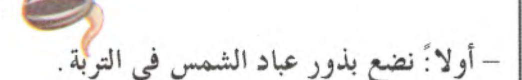
Study the following

1. ندرس فى هذا الدرس مراحل نمو (دورة حياة) زهرة عباد الشمس والكلمات المستخدمة فى ترتيب عملية ما من البداية للنهاية:

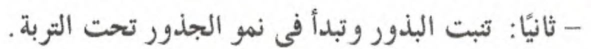
First ⟶ **Next** ⟶ **After that** ⟶ **Finally**

أولاً   التالى   بعد ذلك   اخيراً

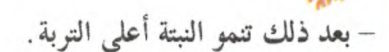
- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil.


– أولاً: نضع بذور عباد الشمس فى التربة.

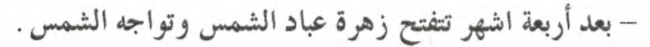
- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.


– ثانيًا: تنبت البذور وتبدأ فى نمو الجذور تحت التربة.

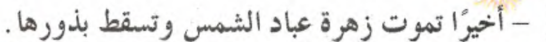
- After that, the shoot grows above the soil.


– بعد ذلك تنمو النبتة أعلى التربة.

- After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.


– بعد أربعة اشهر تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.

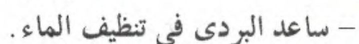

– أخيرًا تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها.



2. ندرس ايضا معلومات عن أهمية نبات مصرى وهو البردى:


- Why was papyrus an important plant? – لماذا كان نبات البردى مهم؟

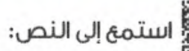
1. Because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
   – لأن المصريون القدماء استخدموه لعمل الورق.
2. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.
   – صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من البردى.
3. Papyrus can help to clean water.


   – ساعد البردى فى تنظيف الماء.

- What does the plant need? – ماذا يحتاج النبات؟
- A lot of water and warm weather. – كثير من الماء وطقس دافئ.
- Where does it live? – أين يعيش البردى؟
- Near the Nile. – بالقرب من النيل.

1 Listen and read about the life cycle of a sunflower:

استمع وأقرأ عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس:







First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.



Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.



After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.



After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Help your child learn about the life cycle of a sunflower. **ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.**

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

2 Order the life cycle of a tomato. رتب دورة حياة ثمرة الطماطم.

1 

2 

3 

4 

5

a. Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again. ☐

b. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller. ☐

c. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. ☐

d. First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it. 1

e. After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers and tomatoes. ☐

3 Work in groups. Think and research: اعمل فى ثنائيات. فكر وابحث:

A report about a plant

Find an Egyptian plant. اقرأ التقرير ثم أجب عن الاسئلة:

Papyrus



Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

1. Why is it an important plant?

- -

2. What does the plant need?

- -

3. Where does it live?

- -



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Papyrus is a very special ....

a animal b plant c food d vegetables

2. Ancient .... used papyrus to make many things.

a French b Italians c Egyptians d British

3. They used papyrus to make ....

a juice b paper c dessert d tea

4. Papyrus grows near the ....

a Nile b beach c farm d desert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The sunflower dies and drops its ....

a seeds b soil c roots d paper

2. Ancient Egyptians made .... and baskets from papyrus.

a trains b cars c rocks d sandals

3. The plant needs a lot of water and warm ....

a fire b weather c salt d sugar

4. The shoot grows above the ....

a soil b sky c sun d star

5. Egyptians used papyrus to make ....

a metal b plastic c baskets d wool

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Finally - roots - dies - First - germinates

I want to plant a sunflower. ❶ ...., I put the seeds in the soil. Next, the seed ❷ .... and starts to grow ❸ .... under the soil. ❹ ...., the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus is a very special plant that grows in the Nile Delta. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....

   a food   b paper   c clothes   d roots

2. The main idea of the passage is about ....

   a water   b gas   c papyrus   d money

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is papyrus?

   ----

4. Where does it live?

   ----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does papyrus need

   ----

2. the shoot grows above the soil

Review

The germination process عملية الانبات


seed بذرة


water يروى


shoot فسيلة / نبتة



soil تربة


root جذر النبات


leaf ورقة شجر


flower وردة


tomato ثمرة طماطم

Plants نباتات


lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس


tamarisk
نبات الاثل


bean plant
نبات الفول


reed
نبات القصب


acacia
شجرة السنط


daisy
زهرة الاقحوان


sunflower
عباد الشمس


rose
وردة

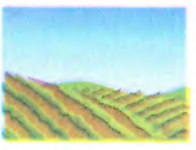

orange tree
شجرة البرتقال

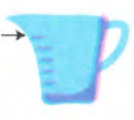

papyrus
ورق البردى

A short story قصة قصيرة

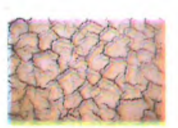

noise
ضوضاء


farm
مزرعة


land
ارض


liter
لتر


rainwater
مياه الامطار


dry
جاف

Math الرياضيات

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred	a thousand	ten thousand	a hundred thousand
مائة	الف	عشرة الاف	مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million	a hundred million	a billion
مليون	مائة مليون	مليار

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives
صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة اشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

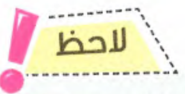
الاسم + the + صفة قصيرة + est

- The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most / least + صفة طويلة

- This bird is the least beautiful bird.
- The snake is the most dangerous animal.



اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضع (iest):

heavy ⟶ heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند اضافة (est):

big ⟶ biggest thin ⟶ thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice ⟶ nicest



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لتنطق كلمة (balcony) بشكل صحيح انطق حرف (a) كما ينطق فى كلمة (man) وانطق حرف (o) كما ينطق فى كلمة (second).

٢ لنطق كلمة (awesome) انطق الحروف (awe) مثل نطق حرفى (oo) فى كلمة (door) وانطق حرف (o) فى (some) كما ينطق فى كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e).

٣ لنطق كلمة (shoot) انطق حرفى (oo) كما ينطقان مثل كلمة (moon).

٤ فى كلمة (agricultural) حرفى (tu) ينطقان مثل (تش) فى اللغة العربية.

٥ لنطق كلمة (habitat) انطق حرفى (a) فى أول وأخر الكلمة كما ينطق فى كلمة (man).

٦ كلمة (reed) تنطق مثل كلمة (seed) تمامًا مع اختلاف أول حرف.

٧ كلمة (acacia) ينطق حرف (a) الأول مثل (o) فى كلمة (second) وحرف الـ (a) الثانى ينطق مثل حرف (a) فى كلمة (make) والمقطع الصوتى (ci) ينطق مثل (ش) فى اللغة العربية.

٨ فى كلمة (daisy) انطق المقطع الصوتى (dai) مثل كلمة (day) وحرف (s) ينطق مثل (z).

٩ لنطق كلمة (billion) و (million) انطق حرف (i) الاول مثل نطقه فى (bin) وحرف (i) الثانى مثل نطق (y) فى (yes) و حرف (o) كما ينطق فى (second).

١٠ فى كلمة (papyrus) انطق حرفى (u/a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى (second) وانطق (py) مثل نطق (pie) تماماً.



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

The Germination process

1 In this process, we put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so, it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

Lesson 2

Plants

2 Plants are beautiful. They are also different. The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is colorful. The sunflower is the heaviest.

Lesson 3

My uncle's farm

3 My uncle's farm is in Sharkia. My uncle grows a lot of plants. He keeps a lot of animals. My uncle raises chickens and ducks, too. I play with the ducks.

Activity - Unit 3

Sunflowers

4 Sunflowers are beautiful. A sunflower faces the sun every day. Farmers grow sunflowers to take their seeds. The seeds of the sunflowers are useful. I like sunflowers.

Al-Azhar Exercises
الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Samir is my .... (father - brother - friend)
2. He wants to be a .... (teacher - doctor - vet)
3. Samir and his friend go to school by .... (car - bus - train)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

seeds - need - sunflowers - doing

A : What are you ------------------------------?
B : I'm growing ------------------------------on our balcony.
A : What do you ------------------------------ to grow them?
B : Soil, ------------------------------ and water.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Salim likes farms and plants. He likes the green color of the leaves. He likes to use the seeds to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The roots grow under the soil. My friend Salim becomes very happy when there is a flower.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does Salim like? ------------------------------
2. When does Salim become very happy? ------------------------------

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. My friend Salim likes the .... color of the leaves. (green - yellow - red)
4. Salim waters the plants every .... (week - day - year)
5. Salim likes to use the seeds to .... new plants. (eat - play - grow)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My city is the .... place to live in.

   a nice b nicer c nicest

2. I think koshari is the .... delicious food.

   a more b much c most

3. .... grow food for us to eat.

   a Teachers b Farmers c Doctors

4. The sunflower is the .... flower.

   a biggest b big c bigger

5. **A:** .... does it live? **B:** Near the river.

   a Where b What c When

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. does - What - need - plant - the?

- -

2. have - inside - Tomatoes - seeds.

- -

3. water - the - We - every - plant - day .

- -

4. grows - near - Papyrus - river - the.

- -

5. beautiful - the - The daisy - flower - is - most.

- -





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. There are different plant ....

a caves   b tents   c habitats   d food

2. Papyrus grows in the .... habitat.

a desert   b river   c seed   d agricultural

3. Papyrus needs ....

a oil   b juice   c water   d tea

4. Orange trees need .... habitat.

a river   b sea   c agricultural   d desert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The tomato plant dies and .... its seeds.

a opens   b gets   c drops   d grows

2. I'm .... of my parents.

a proud   b colorful   c nicest   d heavy

3. The plant needs water, ... and warm weather.

a money   b soil   c boil   d fire

4. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make baskets.

a sunflower   b papyrus   c books   d sunlight

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

proud - plants - worked - rainwater - dry

My father is a farmer. When he was thirty years old, he bought some farms. The farms were 1 ...., but my father 2 .... very hard and planted a lot of seeds and used 3 .... to water the seeds. Now, I'm on the farms and we have a lot of crops. I'm 4 .... of my father.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives on a farm near Benha. It's a very special farm. He grows a lot of plants there. He grows maize and gives it to the animals on the farm to feed them. Ahmed grows many fruits like oranges and lemons. Ahmed lives a good life. He is happy because he grows his food himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed grows oranges and ....

a pears b lemons c apples d peaches

2. Ahmed has a farm near ....

a Benha b Cairo c Tanta d Giza

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Ahmed happy?

- -

4. What does Ahmed give to the animals?

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This daisy is .... (shortest).
2. Snakes are the .... (scary) animal.
3. The sunflower is the .... (heavy) .
4. The butterfly is the .... (more) beautiful insect.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i have two black slippers

- -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Sunflowers

beautiful - faces

- -
- -
- -
- -

Review 1



Objectives of Review 1

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

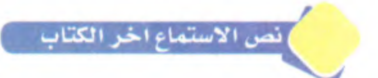
2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١ الى٣.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 Listen and write:

استمع واكتب:





استمع إلى المفردات:

Start

1- ....

2- ....

3- ....

6- ....

5- ....

4- ....

7- ....

8- ....

9- ....

12- ....

11- ....

10- ....

13- ....

14- ....

15- ....

Finish

2 Look and write the words you see. Then match: انظر واكتب الكلمات التى تراها ثم صل:

1- nose

2- c ....

3- m ....

4- s ....

5- s ....

6- s ....

7- p ....

8- b ....

3 Complete the sentences with verbs with 're': اكمل الجمل بأفعال تبدأ ب (re):

paint - make - clean - do

❶ Today I need to ......redo...... my homework.

❷ The kitchen was clean this morning, but now I need to .... it.

❸ I need to .... my garden table.

❹ I burnt the pancakes - I have to .... them.

4 Complete the table اكمل الجدول

1.	taller	the tallest
big	2.	3. ....
heavy	4.	the heaviest
5.	6.	the most beautiful
delicious	7.	8. ....

Lesson 2 Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 Read and write the correct form of the comparative or superlative verb:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للصيغ المقارنة :

1. I think the cheetah is (fast) animal.

I think the cheetah is the fastest animal.

2. An elephant is (big) than a mouse.

---

3. I think beans are (delicious) than potatoes.

---

2 Look and complete with the words in the box:

انظر واكمل بكلمات من الاطار:

close - desert - drink - flat - fur - important - milk - sand - strong

I love camels. They are very ❶ .... animals in Egypt. They are ❷ .... and they can carry people and things across the ❸ ....

They are tall animals, with thin legs.

Their ❹ .... is delicious and we can use their ❺ .... to make clothes.

Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't ❻ .... a lot of water. Their feet are ❼ .... so they can walk on sand in the desert. They can ❽ .... their noses and eyes to stop the ❾ .... from coming in.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Camels can .... people and things.

   a watch b play c feed d carry

2. Camels are .... animals.

   a short b tall c fat d small

3. Camels have delicious ....

   a water b milk c juice d fur

4. Camels are good for the ....

   a village b city c desert d lakes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't like .... food, but I drink cola.

   a healthy b good c nice d unhealthy

2. The pelican has a big ....

   a arm b beak c neck d paw

3. Everyone tries to .... in a competition.

   a lose b raise c travel d win

4. People in Egypt .... rice.

   a grow b draw c play d write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

useful - opens - yellow - garden - plants

My name's Emad. I like ❶ .... very much. I grow many plants in my ❷ .... I grow sunflowers, too. The sunflower is a big flower. It's always ❸ .... in color. It's very beautiful and ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. Each plant lives in a special habitat. We can't grow lotus flowers in desert habitat because they need a lot of water. They grow near lakes or rivers. Farmers need agricultural habitat to grow food for us. The soil in **this** habitat is good for growing many crops.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**this**" refers to .... habitat.

   a rivers b agricultural c desert d lakes

2. The main idea in the passage is about ....

   a habitats b houses c schools d trains

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't we grow lotus flowers in the desert?

   -

4. What habitat do farmers need to grow many crops?

   -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I like animals, ... (**and**) I don't like insects.
2. This story is the .... (**much**) interesting.
3. My friend Ahmed is .... (**tallest**) than me.
4. Let's .... (**grew**) plants in our garden.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

the sunflower is the biggest flower -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Camels and horses

strong - milk

- -
- -
- -
- -



Myself and others

Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟



لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة * انظر اخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع المنازل المختلفة والاماكن فى المدينة.

2. Practice making sentences with prepositions.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بها حروف جر.

3. Read and listen to a short story.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الصوتين /f/ و /v/.

5. Write a short article about your village or city.

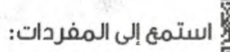
- يكتب الطالب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته.

6. Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبعمل بوستر.

Lesson 1 ★ At home





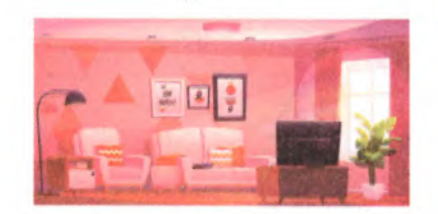




bedroom حجرة نوم



kitchen مطبخ



living room حجرة المعيشة





bathroom* حمام



dining* room حجرة الطعام



room حجرة



balcony بلكونة



tent خيمة



house منزل

Different houses
المنازل المختلفة



apartment شقة



houseboat قارب للسكن

Adjectives صفات



lovely	جميل
fantastic	رائع
favorite	مفضل
whole*	بالكامل

Other words كلمات أخرى



for me	بالنسبة لى
too	جدًا / ايضا
cloth	قماش
quietly	بهدوء
take a shower	يستحم
outside	بالخارج
inside	بالداخل
sounds good	يبدو رائع
building	مبنى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
organize يُرتب	organized
move to ينتقل إلى (يعزّل)	moved to
relax يسترخى / يستريح	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
do homework يعمل الواجب المنزلى	did homework
see يرى	saw
sleep ينام	slept
sit يجلس	sat

Help your child learn about different houses. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المنازل المختلفة.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لطلب المساعدة

Can you help me?

للموافقة: Yes, sure.

للرفض: Sorry, I can't.

2 للإقتراح

Let's + inf مصدر الفعل.

- Let's do it.

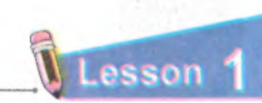
3 نتعلم ايضاً الاشكال المختلفة للمنازل وما يميز كل منزل:

house	It is big.	يكون كبير.
apartment	has a balcony	بها بلكونة
tent	made of cloth	تصنع من القماش
houseboat	on the water	يكون على الماء



Study the following

1. Look at our lovely new apartment! – انظر إلى شقتنا الجميلة الجديدة!
2. Which is your favorite room? – أى حجرة مفضلة لديك؟
3. I can relax and do my homework quietly. – يمكن أن استرخى واقوم بعمل واجبى المنزلى فى هدوء.
4. I can see the whole street. – استطيع أن أرى الشارع بالكامل.
5. Can you help me organize the kitchen? – هل ممكن أن تساعدنى فى ترتيب المطبخ؟
6. That sounds good, let's do it! – هذا يبدو رائعًا. هيا نفعلها!
7. I talk to my family and watch television. – اتكلم مع عائلتى واشاهد التلفاز.
8. I eat dinner with my family in the dining room. – اتناول العشاء مع عائلتى فى غرفة الطعام.
9. I take a shower in the bathroom. – استحم فى الحمام.



1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Talia? استمع واقرأ: أين الأم وتاليا؟



استمع إلى النص:



Mom : Look at our lovely new apartment!

Talia : It's fantastic!

Mom : Which is your favorite room?

Talia : For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

Mom : My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

Talia : That sounds good, let's do it!

2 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع مرة آخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- What are they talking about? ١- عن ماذا كانا يتحدثان؟

2- What is Mom's favorite room? Why? ٢- ما الحجرة المفضله للأم؟ لماذا؟

----

3 Look and match: انظر وصل (كما بالمثال):

1- kitchen (c)

2- bedroom ( )

3- bathroom ( )

4- living room ( )

5- dining room ( )

6- balcony ( )

a 



b 

c 



d 

e 

f 

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

4 Listen and write the correct room: استمع واكتب الحجرة الصحيحة:



1- I cook food in this room. It's the ....

2- I sleep here. It's the ....

3- I talk to my family and watch television in this room. ....

4- I take a shower in this room. ....

5- I love to sit here. I can see the people in the street. ....

6- I eat dinner with my family here. ....

5 Look and read. Then read and complete: انظر واقرأ. ثم اقرأ واكمل:

1. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.



tent

2. My friend and her family live on a .... It's small, but she loves living on water.

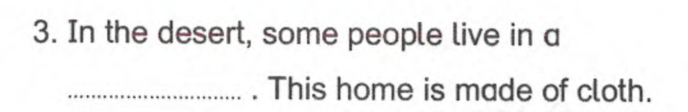


apartment



house

3. In the desert, some people live in a .... This home is made of cloth.



4. I love living in a .... because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.



houseboat

Help your child read and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. There are .... rooms in a new apartment.

a two b four c three d five

2. My favorite room is the ....

a bedroom b kitchen c living room d dining room

3. There's a big .... in the living room.

a balcony b TV c table d bed

4. My .... can cook food quietly.

a grandma b sister c cousin d mom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I sleep in the ....

a kitchen b bathroom c bedroom d balcony

2. I help my mom .... the kitchen.

a relax b organize c sound d burn

3. Some people live in a\an .... in the desert.

a tent b houseboat c apartment d river

4. I live in a .... I love living on water.

a tent b houseboat c kitchen d desert

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

balcony - clean - relax - favorite - because

Our family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic . My 1 .... room is the living room with the 2 .... Yesterday, I helped my mom to 3 .... the kitchen. My sister's favorite room is the bedroom because she can 4 .... and do her homework quietly.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: المنوفية - إدارة السادات (2024)

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room, it's **lovely** with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**lovely**" means ....

a bad b ugly c beautiful d heavy

2. Hamza plays games with his ....

a sister b brother c friend d cousin

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's Hamza's favorite room?

- -

4. When does Hamza play football?

- -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i live in a big house

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

My bedroom

favorite - sleep

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Lesson 2 ★ Where is it?





استمع إلى المفردات:



on على



next to بجوار



in فى

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



between بين



under تحت



in front of امام



behind خلف



above فوق / أعلى

Help your child learn about prepositions of place. **ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.**

استمع إلى المفردات:



school مدرسة



post office مكتب البريد


office مكتب

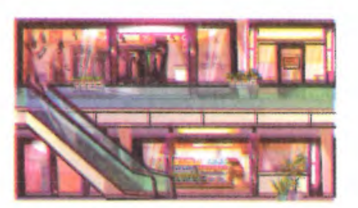

supermarket سوبر ماركت



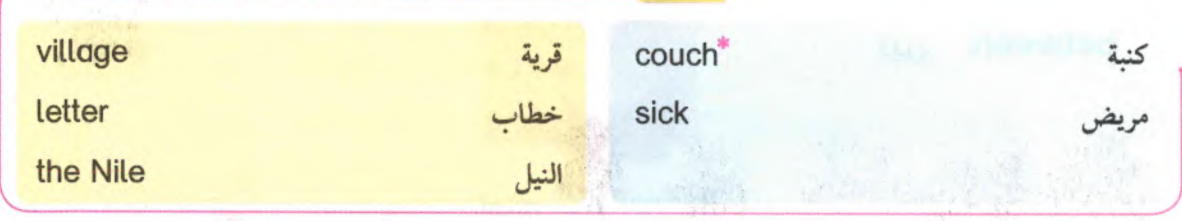


hospital مستشفى


park حديقة عامة

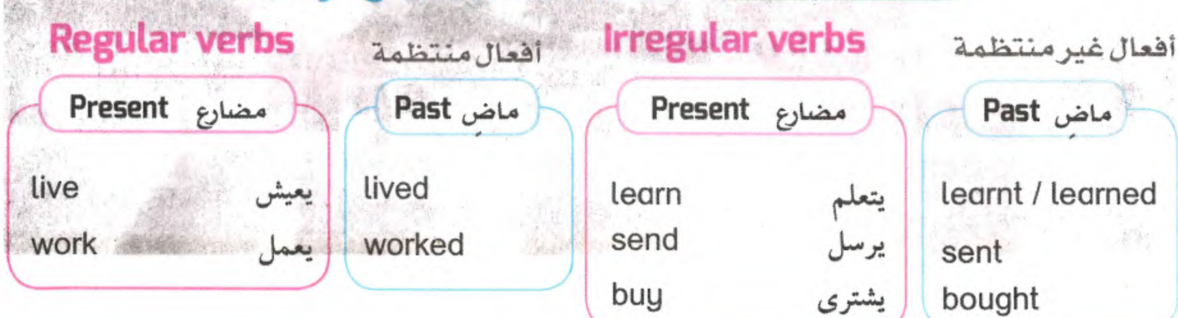

shopping mall* مركز للتسوق


museum متحف



Other words كلمات أخرى

village	قرية	couch*	كنبة
letter	خطاب	sick	مريض
the Nile	النيل		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

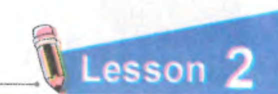
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
work	يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
send	يرسل	sent
buy	يشترى	bought

Help your child learn about public places in the city. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الاماكن العامة فى المدينة.



Language Functions

وظائف لغوية



Prepositions of place

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شئ ما.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The cave is in the rock.
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.

لاحظ الفرق بين (on) و (above) حيث (on) تعنى ان الشئ فوق شئ آخر ويكون ملامس له ولكن (above) تعنى ان شئ يكون اعلى من شئ ولا يكون ملامس له.

Study the following

1. **We buy food at the supermarket.**
   – نشترى الطعام من السوبر ماركت.
2. **We go to hospital when we are sick.**
   – نذهب إلى المستشفى عندما نمرض.
3. **We learn there at school.**
   – نتعلم فى المدرسة.
4. **We send letters at the post office.**
   – نرسل خطابات فى مكتب البريد.
5. **My mom and dad work in an office.**
   – أبى وأمى يعملان فى مكتب البريد.
6. **We buy clothes and shoes at the shopping mall.**
   – نشترى ملابس وأحذية من مركز التسوق.

1 Read and listen. Answer the questions:

اقرأ واستمع. وأجب عن الأسئلة :



My name's Zain. I live in a village **next to** the Nile. I live in a house with my family.

Our house isn't the biggest house in the village. It's **between** a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



- Which house does Zain live in?

----

2 Look and complete the sentences: انظر واكمل الجمل:

1


The tent is .... the car.

2


There's a plant .... the couch.

3


The pink house is .... the red house and the yellow house.

4


There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.

5


The trees are .... the apartments.

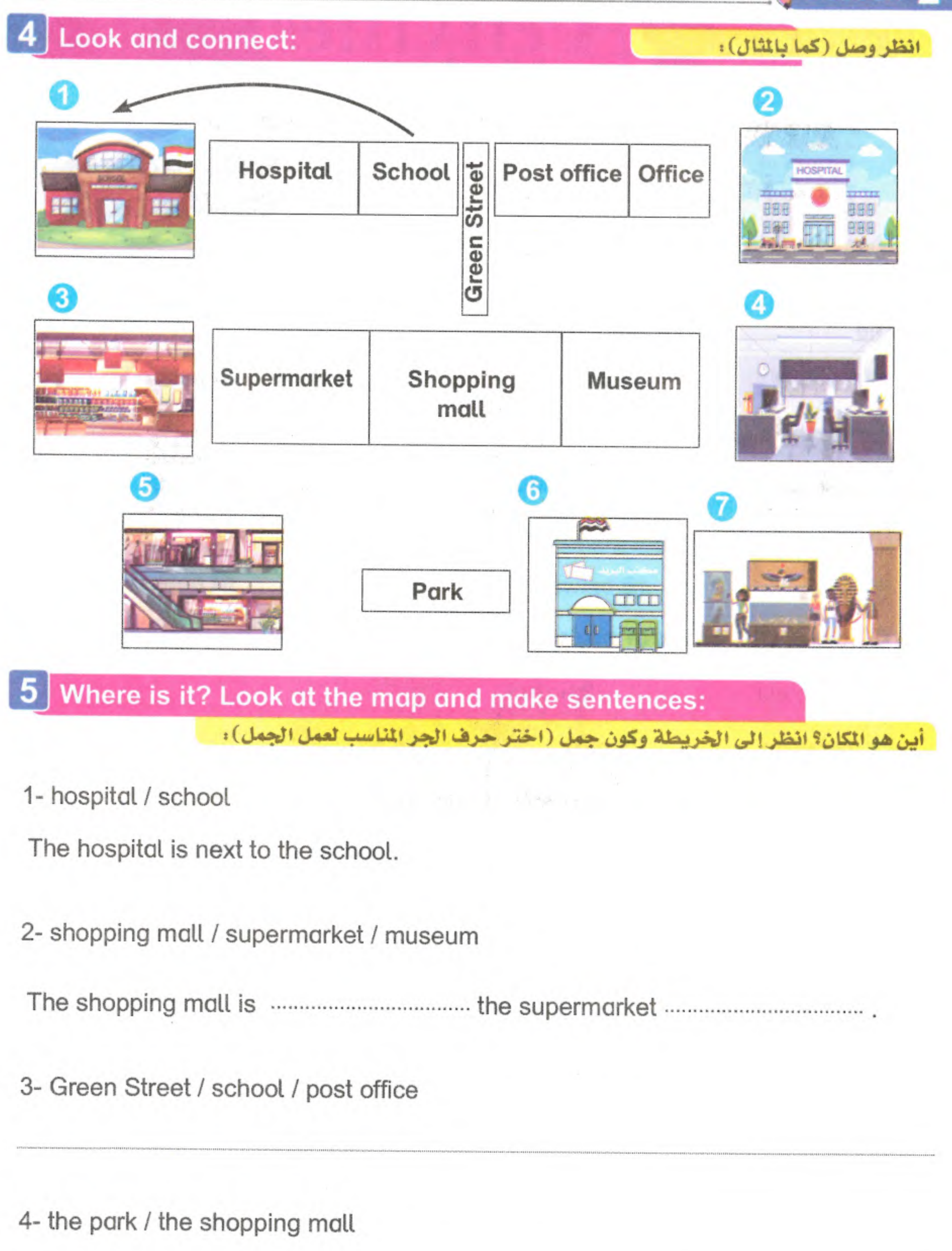
3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 where we buy food	a. office
2 where we send letters	b. supermarket
3 where I learn	c. shopping mall
4 where I buy clothes and shoes	d. school
5 where my mom and dad work	e. hospital
6 where we go when we are sick	f. post office

Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويصل.

4 Look and connect:

انظر وصل (كما بالمثال):



5 Where is it? Look at the map and make sentences:

أين هو المكان؟ انظر إلى الخريطة وكون جمل (اختر حرف الجر المناسب لعمل الجمل):

1- hospital / school

The hospital is next to the school.

2- shopping mall / supermarket / museum

The shopping mall is .... the supermarket ....

3- Green Street / school / post office

....

4- the park / the shopping mall

....

Help your child make sentences with prepositions. ساعد طفلك أن يكون جمل باستخدام حروف الجر.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. There are lots of .... places near my house.

   a old   b big   c public   d wide

2. The .... is behind my house.

   a hospital   b school   c supermarket   d post office

3. Next to the supermarket, there's a ....

   a school   b shopping mall   c park   d hospital

4. There's a shopping mall .... the post office and the park.

   a next   b between   c near   d behind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a cat .... the chair.

   a between   b next   c on   d of

2. The book is .... the door, I can't see it.

   a next   b in front   c behind   d in

3. My sister is sick. She's going to the ....

   a hospital   b museum   c school   d shopping mall

4. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....

   a office   b shopping mall   c hospital   d school

5. **A:** .... is the hospital?

   B: It's behind the park.

   a When   b Where   c Which   d Why

6. We send letters at the ....

   a school   b hospital   c station   d post office

Help your child deal with such questions. **ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.**

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

front - between - supermarket - next - live

My name is Hala. I ❶ .... in Alexandria. There is a ❷ .... in my street. I buy chips from it. It's ❸ .... the post office and the school. There are trees in ❹ .... of it.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The tent is next .... (for) the park.
2. The cat is .... (on) front of the box.
3. The supermarket is between the hospital .... (so) the school.
4. There's a plant .... (between) the couch.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the park is next to the school

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your house

rooms - garden

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

Lesson 3 Part 1 Giving directions

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


office مكتب



store محل / متجر


supermarket سوبر ماركت


school مدرسة

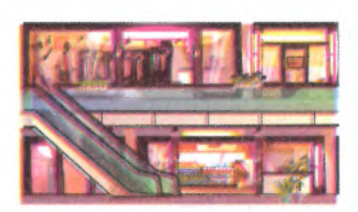




bank بنك



hospital مستشفى


shopping mall مركز تسوق

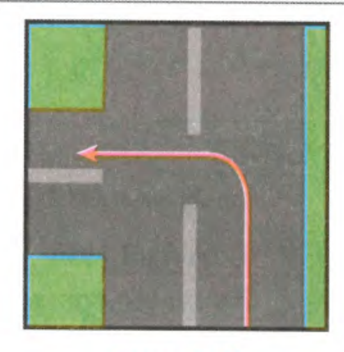

park حديقة عامة


station محطة

Help your child learn about places in the town. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن اماكن فى المدينة.

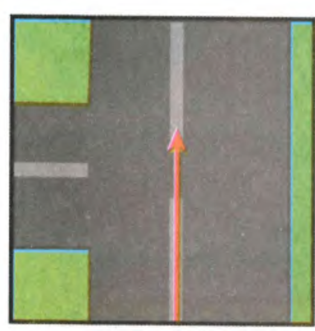


استمع إلى المفردات:



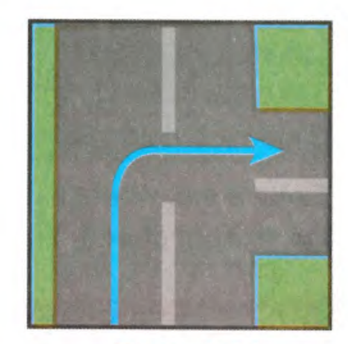
Turn left

استدر يسارًا



Go straight* ahead

سر بشكل مستقيم



Turn right

استدر يمينًا

Giving Directions
اعطاء الاتجاهات



Take the second right

خذ ثانى يمين



It's on the corner

إنها فى ركن / ناصية الشارع



Take the second left

خذ ثانى يسار

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me.	اعذرنى.
Thank you.	اشكرك.
near	قريب / بالقرب من
on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
by car	بالسيارة

corner	ركن / ناصية
See you soon!	اراك قريباً!
on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار

Help your child give the directions. ساعد طفلك ان يعطى الاتجاهات.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

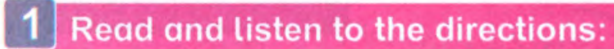
للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

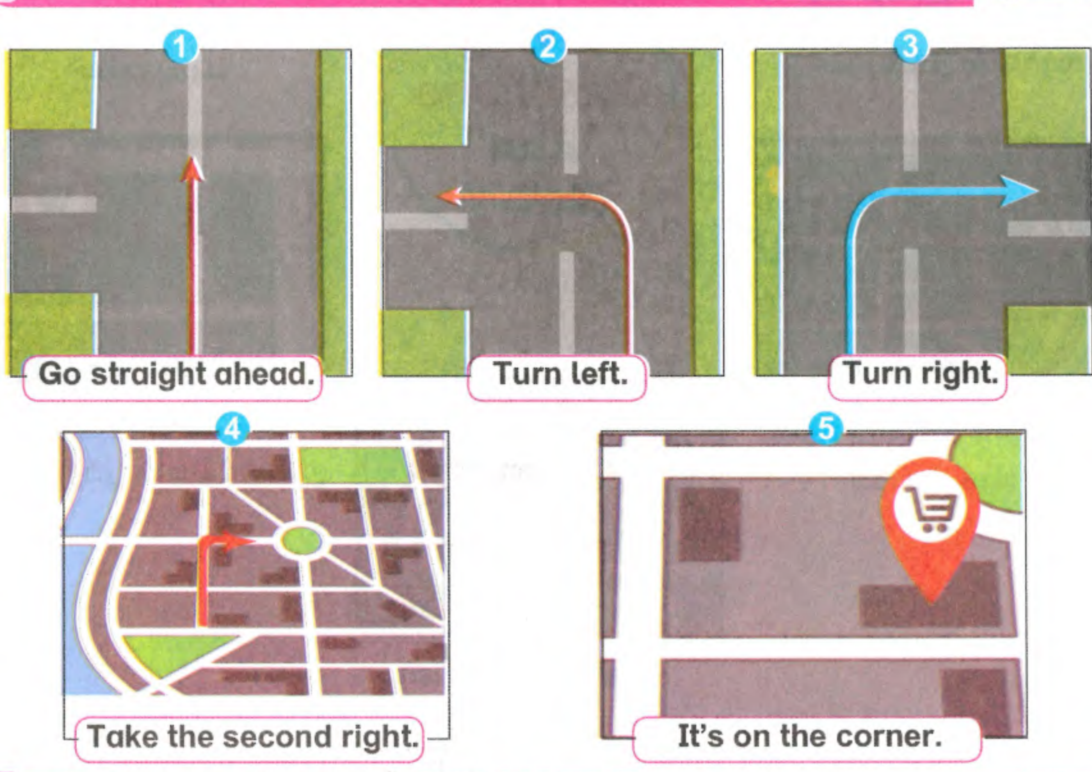
Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the supermarket?
- Go straight ahead. Turn left. The supermarket is on the right.

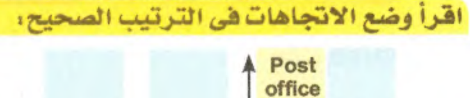


1 Read and listen to the directions:

اقرأ واستمع إلى الاتجاهات:



2 Read and put the directions in the correct order:



☐ Take the second left.

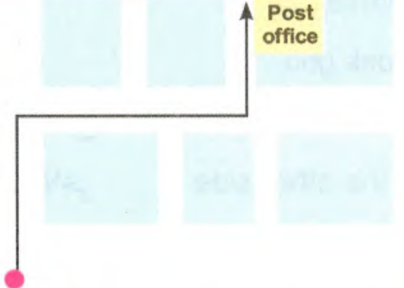
☐ Thank you!

1 Excuse me, where's the post office?

☐ Turn right.

☐ Go straight ahead.

☐ It's on the corner.



Help your child order the directions. ساعد طفلك فى ترتيب الاتجاهات.

3 **Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Does Fareeda live in house A, B or C?:**

ستزور دينا صديقتها فريدة. اقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات. هل فريدة تعيش فى منزل (A, B أو C)؟



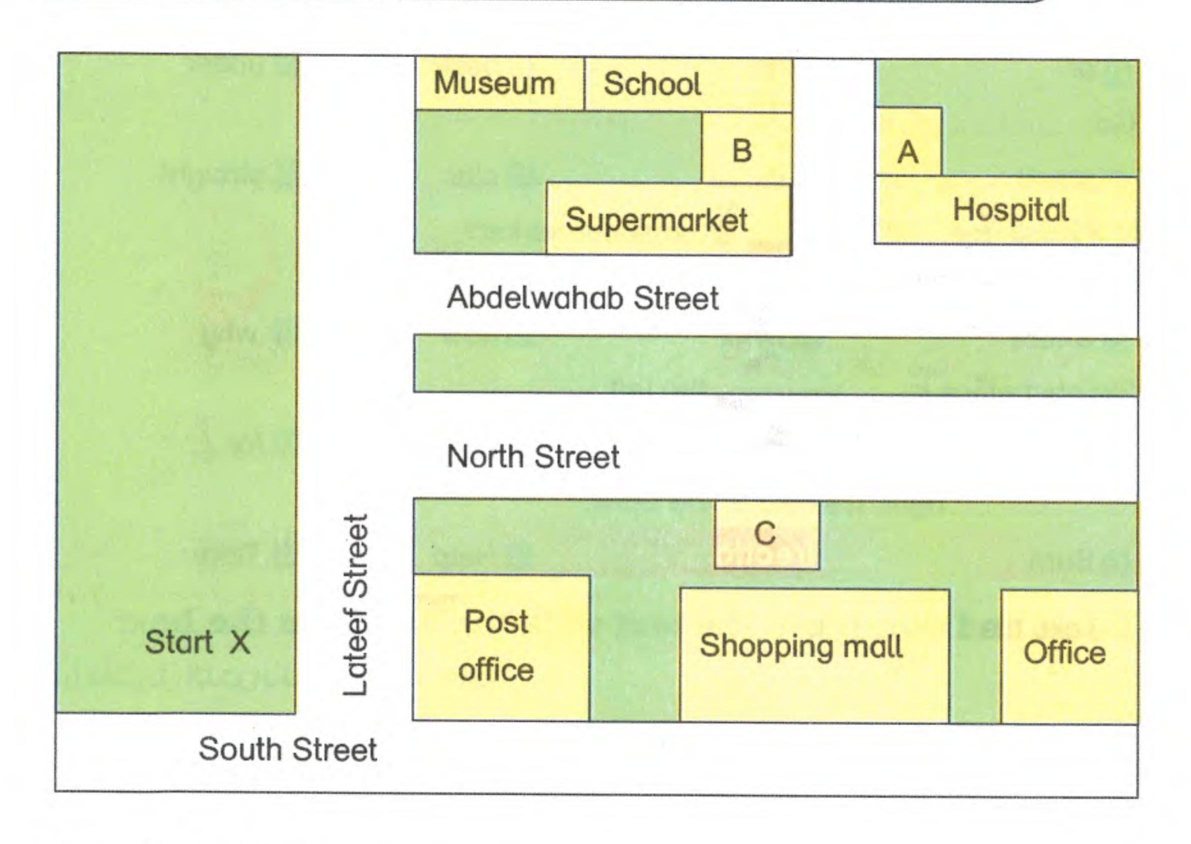
استمع إلى النص:

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



- Fareeda lives in house ....

Help your child read and find Fareeda's house. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجد منزل فريدة.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hany lives in a village next to the ....

a sea b Nile c desert d city

2. Samir is Hany's ....

a uncle b father c brother d cousin

3. Hany's house is the .... house in the village.

a biggest b smallest c longest d shortest

4. There are tall trees .... Hany's house.

a next to b under c on d behind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The hospital is.............................. the corner.

a of b on c between d under

2. Go .... ahead.

a street b stand c star d straight

3. **A:** Excuse me, ... is the supermarket?

B: It's on the left.

a where b what c how d why

4. The post office is .... the left.

a in b of c on d for

5. .... right. It's next to the bank.

a Burn b Turn c Help d Take

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

between - straight - corner - took - right

Yesterday, I visited my friend's new house. My friend gave me the directions. It's near my house. I went ❶ .... ahead. Then, I ❷ .... the second right to Ahmed Helmy Street. I turned ❸ .... at the supermarket. Her house is ❹ .... the school and the hospital.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Dina. I live in a big town. There are many places in my town. My school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a park next to my school. I often play football in the park with my friends. There's a supermarket near my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in an office. He goes there by car. There's a shopping mall next to the office.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about Dina's ....

a supermarket b office c room d town

2. The office is next to the ....

a park b hospital c shopping mall d post office

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Dina go to school?

- -

4. Where does Dina play football?

- -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. where is your school

- -

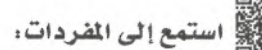
2. fareeda lives in a house

- -

Lesson 3 Part 2

★ LIVING ON A BOAT
★ Pronunciation




استمع إلى المفردات:


summer
الصيف


tourist boats
قوارب سياحية


the Nile
النيل

Other words كلمات أخرى



English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Chinese	اللغة الصينية
interesting places	اماكن شيقة
suddenly	فجأة
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
one day	ذات يوم
on a boat	على قارب

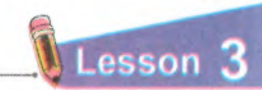
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
save	ينقذ	saved
decide	يقرر	decided
smile	يبتسم	smiled
shout	يصيح	shouted
call	ينادى	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met
swim	يعوم	swam
fall	يسقط	fell
know	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went



1 Read and listen. How did Sherif's dad help the small child?

اقرأ واستمع. كيف ساعد والد شريف الطفل الصغير؟

استمع إلى النص:



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said. "Thank you so much!"

Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

2 Read again and write T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة اخرى وضع صح أو خطأ:

	True	False
1 Sherif lives in a city in the summer.		
2 Sherif can speak English and Chinese.		
3 The small child fell into the river.		
4 Sherif jumped into the river.		

Pronunciation



المس رقبتك باصابعك وانطق كلمة (fish) هل تحركت احبالك الصوتية؟

انطق كلمة (van) بما تشعر؟

تنقسم الاصوات الساكنة فى اللغة الانجليزية إلى voiced وهى الاصوات التى تهتز فيها الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل: (b/d/g/j/l/m/n/r/v/w/y/z/th: this)

وهناك اصوات voiceless وهى التى لا تهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل: (ch/f/k/p/s/sh/t/th: thin)

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل


استمع إلى المفردات:







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I like riding boats in the ....

a fall b spring c summer d winter

2. My father works on a ....

a car b truck c boat d bus

3. I can see interesting .... from the boat.

a places b things c animals d fish

4. My father speaks English and Chinese with the ....

a friends b family c tourists d children

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

speaks - Chinese - meets - tourists - travels

My uncle works on a tourist boat. He likes to travel a lot. He 1 .... to China. He can speak 2 .... He 3 .... people from all over the world. He meets a lot of 4 .... and speaks English with them.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Go .... (street) ahead.
2. .... (Turning) left at the supermarket.
3. The office is .... (for) the corner.
4. Samy can .... (speaking) English.

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Living on a boat

tourist boat - summer

Lessons 4&5 Writing Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Hurghada
مدينة الغردقة


Hurghada* Beach
شاطئ الغردقة


bazaar
سوق شرقى (بازار)


Sahl Hasheesh
منطقة سهل حشيش


Sahara Desert
الصحراء الكبرى


The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر

Other words كلمات أخرى

in the east of	فى شرق	photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
interesting	شيق	map	خريطة
tourist	سائح	diagram	رسم بيانى
safaris	رحلات السفارى		

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

نتعلم فى هذا الدرس كيف تكتب عن المكان الذى تعيش فيه.

Hi, I'm (اسم). I live in a city / village called (اسم مدينتك / قريتك). It is in (south / east of) (north / west of) (مكان المدينة).
About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شيء يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have .... but we have ....

Hi, I'm Hamza. I live in a city called Siwa. It is in west of Egypt. About 35 thousand people live here. There are lots of palm trees here. We don't have skyscrapers, but we have nice houses.

Help your child learn about Hurghada. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن مدينة «الغردقة».



Study the following

1. I live in a city called Hurghada. – اعيش فى مدينة تسمى الغردقة.
2. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. – تقع الغردقة فى شرق مصر.
3. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.
   – إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش بها حوالى ١٩٠,٠٠٠ شخص.
4. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.
   – يوجد بها الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب كثير من السائحين فى رحلات السفارى.
5. Sahl Hasheesh has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
   – يوجد فى سهل حشيش منازل جميلة وبزارات رائعة.

1 Read Mariam's article about Hurghada: اقرأ مقال مريم عن الغردقة:

Hurghada - My town





Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a **beach** and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have **Sahl Hasheesh** in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**.

Cairo

Hurghada



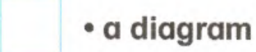
1 Hurghada beach
2 Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt
3 Sahara Desert

2 Read again and complete the table: اقرأ مرة أخرى واكمل الجدول:

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Hurghada	

3 How does Mariam make her text interesting? Check the items she uses. كيف جعلت مريم النص الخاص بها شيقاً؟ ضع علامة (√) على ما تم استخدامه.

- a photo of her √
- a map ☐



- drawings ☐
- a diagram ☐
- photos ☐
- interesting facts ☐

4 Think about your village or city. Do research and complete the table:

فكر في قريتك أو مدينتك: قم بعمل بحث واكمل الجدول:

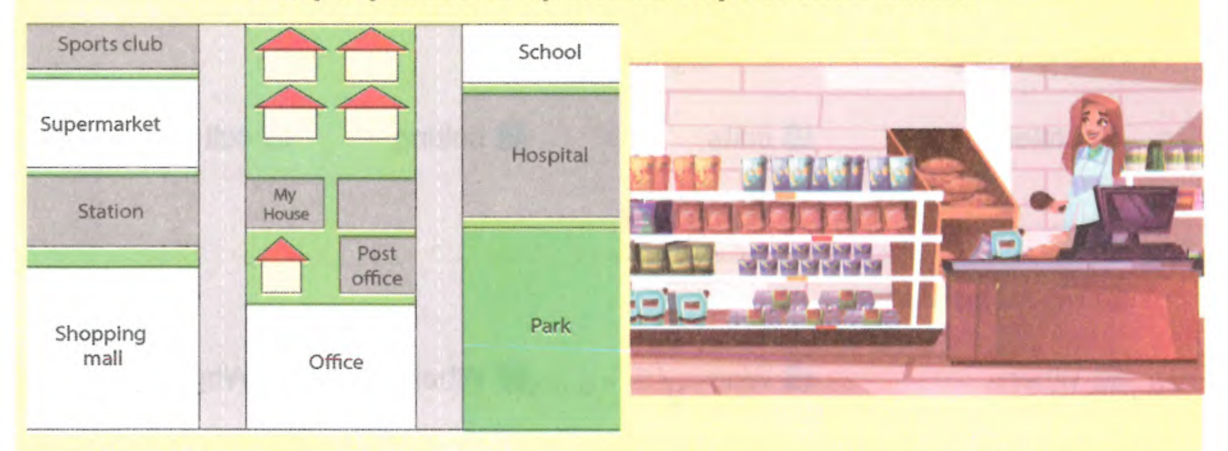
City / Village	
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in my city/ village	

5 Read and answer:

اقرا واجب:


استمع إلى النص:

The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Mona works at a ....

a school   b supermarket   c hospital   d station

2. We can see Mona every .... when we buy food.

a month   b week   c day   d year

3. Mona checks the food is ....

a delicious   b bad   c fresh   d healthy

4. Mona is a/an .... girl.

a unhealthy   b kind   c unkind   d useful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live in a city .... Hurghada.

a called   b calls   c calling   d call

2. **A:** .... lives in Hurghada?

B: My friend Mariam.

a When   b Who   c Where   d Why

3. We can buy beautiful things at the ....

a bazaars   b tourists   c photos   d gardens

4. Tourists can go on .... in the Sahara Desert.

a sleeping   b safaris   c swimming   d diving

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bazaars - tourists - sea - safaris - interesting

I live in Giza. There are a lot of ❶ .... places you can visit. Many ❷ .... visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. There are many ❸ .... in Giza. Tourists can go on ❹ .... in Giza.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hurghada is a big city

- -

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Hurghada

east - the Sahara Desert

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

Review

Inside the house داخل المنزل


room
حجرة


balcony
بلكونة

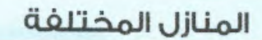

bedroom
حجرة نوم


living room
حجرة المعيشة


kitchen
مطبخ


bathroom
حمام

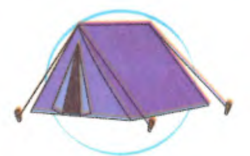

dining room
حجرة الطعام



Different houses المنازل المختلفة


house
منزل


apartment
شقة


tent
خيمة

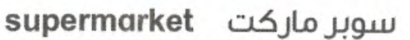

houseboat
قارب للسكن

Public places اماكن عامة


post office مكتب البريد


school مدرسة


office مكتب



supermarket سوبر ماركت



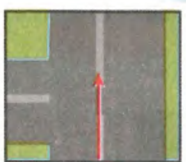

hospital مستشفى

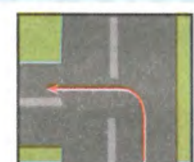

shopping mall مركز للتسوق



Help your child review Unit 4. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Giving Directions اعطاء الاتجاهات


Go straight ahead
سر بشكل مستقيم


Turn left
استدر يسارًا


Turn right
استدر يمينًا


Take the second right
خذ ثاني يمين


It's on the corner
إنها في ركن الشارع


Take the second left
خذ ثاني يسار

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 السؤال عن المكان نستخدم

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the post office?
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. The post office is on the corner.

2 Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

◉ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شئ ما.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The cave is in the rock.
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (whole) حرف (w) لا ينطق أى (silent) .
٢ لنطق كلمة (dining) انطق حرف (i) الأول ينطق مثل (i) كما في كلمة (kite).
٣ لنطق كلمة (bathroom) حرفي (th) ينطقان مثل (ث) في اللغة العربية .
٤ في نطق كلمة (couch) المقطع الصوتي (ou) ينطق كما في كلمة (out).
٥ لنطق كلمة (mall) المقطع الصوتي (all) ينطق مثل نطق كلمة (fall) حيث حرف (a) ينطق مثل حرف (o).
٦ لا تنطق حرفي (gh) في كلمة (straight) .
٧ لنطق كلمة (Hurghada) حرفي (gh) ينطقان مثل (ج) في اللغة العربية.



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1
My bedroom

1 My house has a lot of rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom. I sleep in it. I read stories there. I like my house very much.

Lesson 2
Your house

2 I live in a big house. It has a lot of rooms. I love it because it's big. I can play outside my house. My house has a beautiful garden. I watch TV in the living room.

Lesson 3
Living on a boat

3 My dad works on a tourist boat. He travels up and down the Nile. He likes the summer. He sees many interesting places. He speaks English, too.

Lessons 4&5
Hurghada

4 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. You can visit the Hurghada beach. About 190,000 people live there. The Sahara Desert there is very interesting. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

Activity - Unit 4
Your town

5 I live in a big town. It's clean and quiet. There are a lot of interesting places. My school is near my house. There's a supermarket next to my school. I can buy food from it..

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in a .... village. **(small - big - fat)**
2. Ahmed's school is next to the .... **(park - farm - hospital)**
3. There's a shopping mall on the .... **(left - right - corner)**

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

front - house - outside - live

A : Where do your grandparents ------------------------------?

B : They live in a --.

A : Is there a garden in -------------------------- of the house?

B : Yes, I can play ------------------------------ with my brother.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. I watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What grade is Hend in? --
2. Where does Hend live? --

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Hend likes to do her homework in the .... (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)
4. Hend's father grows .... and onions. (mangoes - tomatoes - potatoes)
5. Hend's house has three .... (bedrooms - bathrooms - kitchens)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sherif .... English and Chinese.
   a travels b meets c speaks
2. The office is in .... of the school.
   a next b front c above
3. Take the second ....
   a right b write c light
4. It's next .... the post office.
   a on b to c too
5. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a left b corner c east

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. does - do - What - she? -
2. works - at - supermarket - She - the. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
3. people - live - How many - there? - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
4. The hospital - next to - is - the school. - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
5. live - grandparents - My - a tent - in. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

Activities on Unit 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Nada loves her ....

a farm   b town   c room   d park

2. Nada's town is ....

a quiet   b noisy   c small   d dirty

3. Nada's town has ....

a animals   b schools   c planes   d mice

4. Nada's town is a .... place to live in.

a good   b bad   c scary   d long

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I take a shower in the ....

a kitchen   b living room   c bathroom   d balcony

2. The hospital is .... to the post office.

a on   b behind   c in front   d next

3. People in the desert live in a ....

a boat   b tent   c balcony   d ship

4. **A:** .... is the bank? **B:** It's next to the hospital.

a Where   b What   c When   d Why

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

teacher - next - like - English - mall

I live in a small town. My school is ❶ .... to a big park. My father is a ❷ .... He is very kind. He teaches ❸ .... Students ❹ .... him very much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend, Mariam lives in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city in the east of Egypt. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh is in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....

a Cairo   b Hurghada   c Luxor   d Alexandria

2. Sahl Hasheesh is in the .... of Hurghada.

a north   b south   c east   d west

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Mariam live?

- -

4. What does Sahl Hasheesh have?

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There's a hospital .... (on) the park and the school.

2. A: .... (When) is the shopping mall? B: Turn right.

3. I live in a city .... (calls) Siwa.

4. Which house does Zain .... (living)?

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

I can speak english -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your town

clean - supermarket

- -

- -

- -



Myself and others

Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟



لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة * أنظر اخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about workers in my community.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.

2. Learn about electricity.

- يتعلم الطالب عن الكهرباء.

3. Practice using this, that, these, those.

- يتدرب الطالب علي استخدام (هذا / هذه - ذلك / تلك - هؤلاء - أولئك).

4. Practice word stress on two-syllable words.

- يتدرب الطالب علي نطق المقاطع المشددة فى الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين .

5. Think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

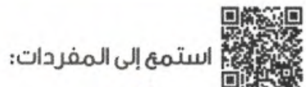
- يفكر الطالب ويكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.

6. Make a report about workers in my community.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل تقرير عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.

Lesson 1 Listening

Key vocabulary




electrician* كهربائي


plumber* سباك

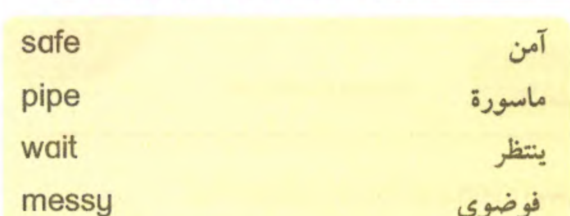

garbage* collector عامل نظافة


mail carrier ساعي بريد


mechanic* ميكانيكي


bus driver سائق اتوبيس

Other words كلمات أخرى



safe	آمن
pipe	ماسورة
wait	ينتظر
messy	فوضوي

garbage = trash	قمامة
faucet*	حنفية
parcel	طرد / رزمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
deliver	يُوصل	delivered
fix	يصلح	fixed
connect	يربط/ يُوصل	connected
drip	ينقط	dripped
wait	ينتظر	waited
collect	يجمع	collected
hope	يأمل	hoped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
forget	ينسى	forgot
take out	يُخرج / يُزيل	took out
drive	يقود	drove
put out	يضع شيء في مكانه	put out

Help your child learn about different jobs. **ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الوظائف المختلفة.**



Study the following

◉ نتعلم فى هذا الدرس عن الوظائف المختلفة وما تقدمه كل وظيفة.

Job الوظيفة	Description الوصف
electrician كهربائى	- loves making things work. يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.
plumber سباك	- connects your home to water. يوصل منزلك بالماء. - fixes pipes and faucets. يصلح المواسير والحنفيات.
garbage collector عامل النظافة	- takes away all the garbage. يأخذ كل القمامة. - works hard to collect the trash. يعمل بجد لجمع القمامة.
mail carrier ساعى البريد	- delivers your letters and parcels. يوصل خطاباتك وطرودك.
mechanic ميكانيكى	- fixes cars or buses. يصلح السيارات أوالاتوبيسات.
bus driver سائق الاتوبيس	- drives you to many different places. يوصلك لأماكن مختلفة. - helps you get to school on time. يساعدك أن تصل إلى المدرسة فى الوقت المحدد.

➤ تعلم ايضاً الاجابة عن اسئلة تخص الوظائف.

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why? أى وظيفة هى الأكثر مُتعة؟ لماذا؟
   - I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. Because you drive to many different places and help lots of people.
2. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أى وظيفة هى الأصعب؟ ولماذا؟
   - I think being an electrician is the most difficult job. Because you can get an electric shock.



Where do you work?

1 Listen and read. What is Dad's job? استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:

Zeinab : Dad, do you like your job?

Dad : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's **wet**(1) and **messy**(2) because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

Zeinab : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

Dad : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

Zeinab : So what happened?

Dad : Well, I don't really like **driving**(3)! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

Zeinab : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

Youssef : Yes, I love making things work!

Dad : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

Zeinab : And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

Arabic Meaning

١- رطب - مبلل
٢- فوضوى
٣- القيادة

2 Read again and complete the sentences with words from Exercise 1:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل بالكلمات من التمرين رقم (١).

1. When he was young, Dad wanted to be a ______________________________ or a __________________________.
2. Youssef is an __________________.
3. The ____________________________ arrives as they are talking.
4. Zeinab forgot to put the trash out for the _______________ _______________.
5. If you have a problem with pipes or faucets in your house, you need a __________________.

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.



3 Listen and say. Then write: استمع وقل ثم أكتب:

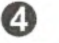
bus driver - electrician - garbage collector

mail carrier - mechanic - plumber

1 

2 

3 



electrician -------------------------

4 

5 

6 

----

4 What do you think? ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why? أى عمل هو الأكثر إثارة؟ لماذا؟

----

2. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أى وظيفة هى الاصعب؟ لماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

هل تعلم أن القاهرة تنتج ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة سنويًا. يعمل عمال النظافة بجد لجمع هذه القمامة.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب — الشرقية - فاقوس (2023)

1. The family were .... yesterday.

   a sad b funny c busy d asleep

2. Mom fixed the .... in the kitchen.

   a pipes b cars c faucets d buses

3. Dad was .... his car.

   a arriving b fixing c selling d buying

4. Fatma gave the .... to the mail carrier.

   a parcel b faucet c trash d pipe

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A garbage collector .... the trash.

   a makes b builds c draws d collects

2. We need a mechanic to .... our car. القاهرة - عابدين (2023)

   a deliver b help c fix d play

3. A mail carrier delivers your ....

   a parcels b faucets c electricity d water

4. A / An .... drives the bus.

   a electrician b farmer c plumber d bus driver

5. The .... connects your home to water.

   a bus driver b electrician c plumber d doctor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

loves - pipes - useful - trash - delivers المنوفية - تلا (2023)

There are many different jobs in our country. These jobs are very 1 .... Many people help us in our homes. For example, an electrician 2 .... making things work. A plumber fixes the 3 .... A garbage collector collects the 4 ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many people around us work hard. We help each other. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A bus driver drives to many different places and helps people. A mail carrier delivers letters. He is outside all day. His bag is very heavy. All of them work hard. They are very important for us and help us every day in our life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... helps us to clean our houses.

   a plumber   b garbage collector   c vet   d nurse

2. A plumber connects the .... and faucets.

   a cars   b pipes   c lights   d letters

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the bus driver do? ------------------------------------

4. What does the garbage collector take away? ---------------------------

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like your job ------------------------------------
2. i love making things work ------------------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The plumber

pipes - connects

Lesson 2 IS IT NEAR OR FAR? Electricity





استمع إلى المفردات:



socket مقبس (بريزة)



electricity كهرباء



electrician كهربائي



plug فيشة



electric shock صدمة كهربائية



lightning برق



storm عاصفة



light ضوء



parcel طرد



tools أدوات



trash قمامة

Other words كلمات أخرى

safely	بأمان
flash	وميض
never	ابدًا
repair shop	ورشة إصلاح السيارات
How fast...?	كم سرعة... ؟
speed	سرعة
wet hands	أيدى مبتلة
dry	جاف
save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
interviewer	محاور
near	قريب
far	بعيد
close to	قريب من
huge amount	كمية ضخمة
energy	طاقة

Help your child learn about electricity. **ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكهرباء.**

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
study	يدرس - يتدرب	studied	become	يصبح	became
practice	يتدرب / يمارس	practiced	burn	يحرق / يحترق	burnt
control	يتحكم	controlled	put	يضع	put
touch	يلمس	touched	get	يحصل على	got

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 لاعطاء امر بفعل شىء ابدا الجملة بـ

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

2 لاعطاء امر بعدم فعل شىء نبدا بـ

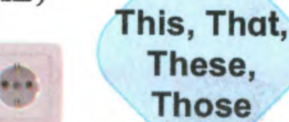
Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

3 **This, That, These, Those**

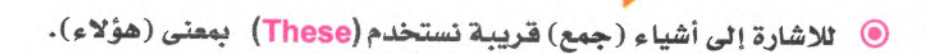
◉ للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (**this**) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

◉ للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (**that**) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the water dripping from the faucet.



◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (**These**) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

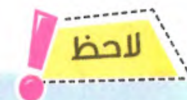
- These are the plumber's tools.



◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (**Those**) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.



عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).

- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد . إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).
- ويأتي مع this / that فعل مفرد (is /has).
- ويأتي مع these /those فعل جمع (are /have)



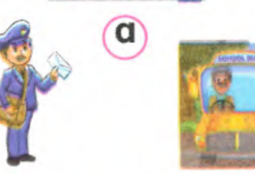
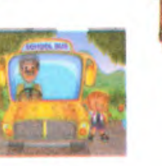
Study the following

1. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. - لا تلمس أى شيء كهربى ويديك مبتلة.
2. Never put anything into a socket. - لا تضع أي شيء في البريزة.
3. Only use plugs. - استخدم الفيشة فقط.
4. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical. - تأكد دائما أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربى.
5. Electricity travels very fast. - الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة شديدة.
6. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm. - يوجد كمية هائلة من الطاقة فى العاصفة الكهربائية.
7. Electricity is very dangerous. - الكهرباء خطيرة جدًا.
8. Electricity can burn us. - الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
9. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. - إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

1 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures:

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصور:

1. That mail carrier is delivering letters.
2. These mechanics work in the repair shop.
3. This bus is taking me to school.
4. Those drivers are driving the new buses.


a b c d



2 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:

That - These - This - Those

1. Can you see? .... 's the mail carrier. **(far)**

2. .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. **(near)**

3. .... children are going to school. **(near)**

4. .... children are watching TV. **(far)**

3 Change the sentences into plural: حول الجمل إلى صيغ الجمع:

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.

   These are the faucets in our bathrooms.

2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.

   ----

3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

   ----

4. That is the plumber who came to our house.

   ----

4 Read the interview quickly. Then answer the questions: اقرأ المقابلة سريعاً ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

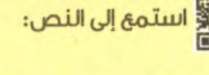
- **Answer the questions:**

1. Why is electricity dangerous?

   ----

2. Is it easy to become an electrician?

Help your child learn about workers in his community. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.



Amira the electrician

This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.



Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light! In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm!

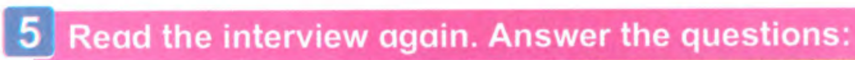
Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.



Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.



5 Read the interview again. Answer the questions:

اقرأ المقابلة مرة أخرى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

1. How fast can electricity travel?

----

2. How can you use electricity safely at your home?

----

6 Read and complete the sentences:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

- Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
- Always make sure your hands are .... before you touch anything electrical.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Use only .... into a socket.

a lights b bodies c plugs d computers

2. Don't touch anything electrical with .... hands.

a wet b dry c dirty d clean

3. Those .... are working in the repair shop.

a mechanics b builders c mail carriers d teachers

4. You should be careful because electricity is ....

a safe b dangerous c nice d kind

5. Amira studied electricity, she is a/an ....

a plumber b mechanic c electrician d driver

6. I love football and I .... twice a week.

a travel b practice c control d burn

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plugs - control - touch - use - socket

Electricity is very dangerous. We should 1 .... electricity safely at home. We should never 2 .... anything electrical with wet hands. We never put anything into a 3 ...., only use 4 ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity.

He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad wants to be a/an ....

   a plumber   b electrician   c farmer   d mail carrier

2. We see a flash of lightning in a ....

   a storm   b trash   c parcel   d socket

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. -
4. How fast can electricity travel? -

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (That) mountains are very high.
2. .... (This) are the pipes in the bathroom.
3. .... (That) children are going to school.
4. That .... (are) a plumber who comes to our house.
5. .... (These) apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
6. .... (Doesn't) touch anything electrical with wet hands.
7. The drivers .... (is) driving the buses.
8. Look, ... (this) bird is flying.
9. .... (That) children are watching TV.
10. .... (These) is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

is electricity dangerous

- -

Lesson 3 ★ Three cousins

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:



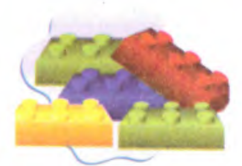
architect*
مهندس معمارى



experiment
يجرب / يختبر



screwdriver*
مفك



blocks
لعبة المكعبات



cell phone
تليفون محمول



tape measure
شريط قياس



radio
راديو



electrician
كهربائى



fan مروحة



teacher مدرس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
open	يفتح	opened
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained
call	يتصل	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
get angry	يغضب	got angry
put	يضع	put
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt

Other words كلمات أخرى

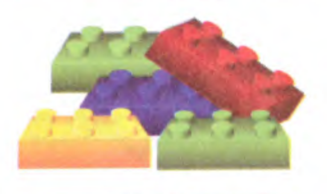
different	مختلف	learn about	يتعلم عن
curious	فضولى	sometimes	احيانًا
on top of another	فوق الآخر	patient*	صبور
still	ما يزال	adult	شخص راشد (بالغ)

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

1 Look, listen, and say: انظر واستمع وقل:


screwdriver


tape measure

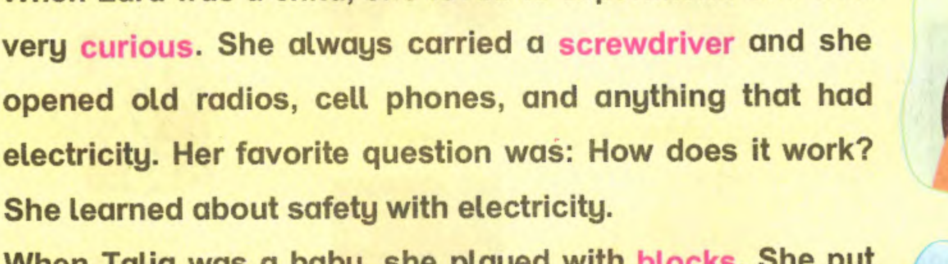

blocks

2 Read and listen. Do you know anyone like Lara, Talia, or Amir?

اقرأ واستمع هل تعرف أشخاص مثل لارا وتاليا وأمير؟

استمع إلى النص:

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.



When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was: How does it work? She learned about safety with electricity.

Lara

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.

Talia

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

Amir

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults, but they still call each other when they need some help.

3 Think, choose, and write. What do you think Lara, Talia, and Amir do today?:

فكر وأختر واكتب في رأيك ما هي وظيفة لارا وتاليا وأمير اليوم؟

an architect - an electrician - a teacher

1. Lara is --
2. Talia is --
3. Amir is --



4 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Who does Amir call when the fan doesn't work? ---------------
2. Who does Lara call when she wants to change something in her house?

----

3. Who does Talia call when she doesn't understand something in her English class?

Pronunciation & Math

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

◉ تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتى يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلى:

Count the syllables.

wa ter mel on ba na na

١) كلمة **bin** تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد حيث بها صوت **short i**.

٢) كلمة **dentist** تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين [e / i].

لاحظ!

١) فى اغلب الكلمات إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهى بذلك تعد مقطع صوتى واحد.
فمثلاً كلمة **builder** بها حرفين متحركين متتاليين (u / i) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.

٢) فى كلمة **make** تنتهى الكلمة بحرف **e** لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.

٣) إذا جاءت (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (l) فهنا تعد مقطع صوتى كما فى كلمة **apple**.

٤) لاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة **city** تحتوى على مقطعين صوتين.

1 Look and say. How many syllables are in each word?:

أنظر وقل كم عدد المقاطع الصوتية فى كل كلمة مما يلى:

electrician	4	e-lec-tri-cian	plumber	
teacher	2	teach-er	mechanic	
collector			dentist	
architect			doctor	

Help your child learn how to count the syllables. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية.

- بعد ان تعلمنا أن الكلمات الانجليزية تُقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية نتعلم أن هناك مقطع يكون مشدد فى الكلمة (أى أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز فى الكلمة).

وتختلف الشدة (ّ) فى اللغة العربية حيث تكون علي حرف فى الكلمة أما فى اللغة الانجليزية تكون على مقطع من المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية لان ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pres-ent) تعنى هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثاني pres-ent يكون معناها يُقدم.

- ولمعرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحث عن الكلمة فى قاموس وسنرى علامة (•) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلا فى كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى(den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول.

dentist

- لاحظ الكلمات الآتية التشديد على المقطع الأول.

plumber / teacher / builder / driver / doctor / architect

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثانى.

mechanic

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثالث.

electrician

2 Which one is correct? Listen and choose:

أى مقطع مشدد؟ استمع واختر:



dentist or dentist

3 Underline the stressed syllable in the words:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات:

plumber teacher collector dentist driver doctor

4 Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها التشديد الصحيح:

1. plumber	plumber	4. mechanic	mechanic
2. teacher	teacher	5. driver	driver
3. collector	collector	6. doctor	doctor

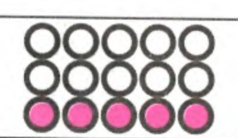
CLIL: MATH

Math: Division

- عملية القسمة هى تقسيم مجموعة أشياء إلى أجزاء متساوية.

TIP!

Division is separating into different groups.
15 ÷ 3 = 5 Fifteen divided by three equals five.



- عملية القسمة هى تقسيم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.

لدينا هنا ٤ تفاحات وولدين والمطلوب تقسيم التفاح على الولدين بالتساوى. **4 ÷ 2 = 2**







9 ÷ 3 = 3

فى هذا المثال لدينا ٩ جزرات وثلاث بنات ولمعرفة كم جزرة لكل فتاه نقسم العدد الكبير (الجزر) على العدد الصغير (البنات).









1 Look and think. Write the missing numbers:

انظر وفكر. أكتب الأرقام الناقصة:

1 a	100 ÷ .... = 2	b	100 ÷ 2 = ...
2 a	100 ÷ 25 = ...	b	100 ÷ .... = 25
3 a	100 ÷ .... = 5	b	100 ÷ 5 = ...

2 Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد:

استمع للنص وتأكد من إجابتك فى التمرين السابق.

Tapescript نص الاستماع



1 a one hundred divided by fifty equals two.
b one hundred divided by two equals fifty.
2 a one hundred divided by twenty-five equals four.
b one hundred divided by four equals twenty-five.
3 a one hundred divided by twenty equals five.
b one hundred divided by five equals twenty.

3 Read and solve the problem:

اقرأ وحل المسألة:

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children.
How many buses do they need? -



Find out



What is this symbol ÷ called? A Swiss mathematician* called Johann Rahn used it first in 1659.

ماذا يسمى الرمز ÷؟ استخدمه عالم رياضيات سويسرى يدعى يوهان ران لأول مرة عام ١٦٥٩.

A mathematician* works with numbers and math problems.

يعمل عالم الرياضيات مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fatma, Farid and Amr are ....

   a friends   b cousins   c parents   d babies

2. Farid wanted to be a/an ....

   a electrician   b teacher   c architect   d plumber

3. Amr always carried ....

   a a radio   b a screwdriver   c blocks   d a tape measure

4. Fatma wanted to be a/an ....

   a architect   b teacher   c mechanic   d mail carrier

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The electrician uses .... to open old radios.

   a blocks   b tape measures   c screwdrivers   d pens

2. The .... always carries a tape measure and a pencil.

   a teacher   b architect   c farmer   d electrician

3. Lara is ...., she always wants to know about something.

   a lazy   b dangerous   c curious   d patient

4. Marawan is always .... He is never angry.

   a sad   b bad   c ugly   d patient

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

explained - different - angry - teacher - helping

When I was a child, I always was patient. I liked ❶ .... people. I was never ❷ .... with my brothers or sisters. I played and helped my friends. I ❸ .... things all the time. Now I'm a ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

(2024) قنا

My sister Mona is in Grade Four. She wants to be an architect. When Mona was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. **She** made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about a/an ....

   a) job b) animal c) hospital d) office

2. Mona's .... always help her.

   a) father b) mother c) parents d) cousins

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**She**" refer to?

   -

4. Summarize the text in two sentences.

   -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where do you live

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

An electrician

connects - sockets

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Lessons 4&5 Writing Project

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


good
جيد


bad سيء


cleaner
عامل نظافة


aunt خالة / عمة


mail carrier
ساعى بريد

Other words كلمات أخرى



class	حصة / درس	pros (good things)	مميزات
on the one hand	من جهة	cons (bad things)	عيوب
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى	America	أمريكا
point	نقطة	easy	سهل
fun	ممتع	heavy	ثقيل
everyone	كل احد	weather	طقس
great	رائع	everybody	كل شخص
exercise	تدريب / تمرين	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

ندرس فى هذا الدرس مميزات (pros) وعيوب (cons) وظيفة ساعى البريد:

Pros مميزات	Cons عيوب
- Mail carriers get a lot of <u>exercise</u>. - يحصل ساعى البريد على الكثير من التدريب.	- The mail bag is very <u>heavy</u>. - حقيبة ساعى البريد ثقيلة جدًا.
- They <u>speak</u> to a lot of people. - يتحدثون إلى الكثير من الناس.	- Mail carriers <u>wake up</u> very early. - يستيقظ ساعى البريد مبكرًا جدًا.

1 Think about a mail carrier's job. What are the good and bad things about the job?: فكر فى وظيفة ساعى البريد ما مميزات وعيوب هذه الوظيفة؟

2 Read and complete the table: اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:

استمع إلى النص:

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.



On one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier. On the other hand there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy.

Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Pros (Good things)	Cons (Bad things)
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	It's not easy.
....	....
....	....

Help your child know the pros and cons of being a mail carrier. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف مميزات وعيوب أن يكون ساعى بريد.

A report about people who help us

تقرير عن ناس تساعدنا

3 **Read the report:** اقرأ التقرير:


استمع إلى النص:



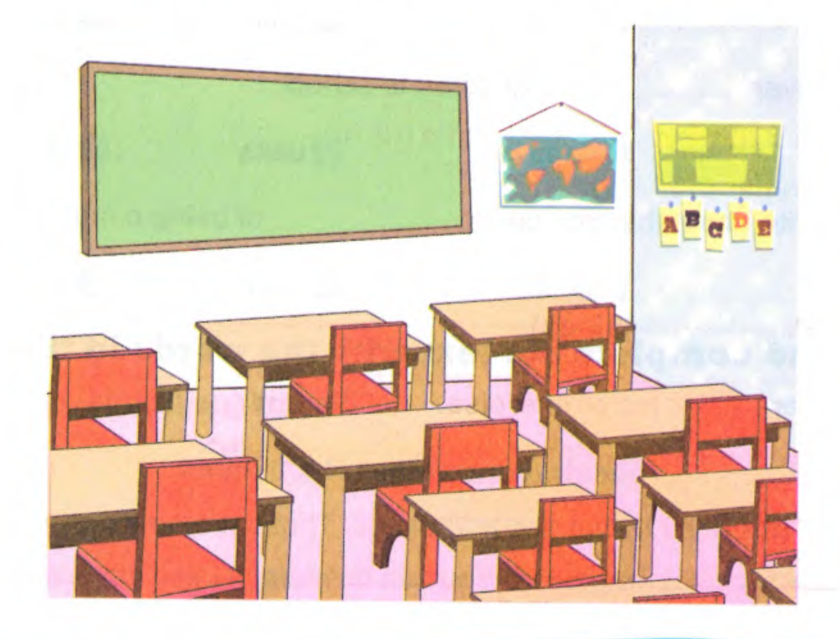
Workers who made our school



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sally lives in ....

a Benha b Suez c Giza d Cairo

2. Sally's father wanted to be a/an .... when he was young.

a mechanic b teacher c electrician d bus driver

3. .... is a teacher.

a Sally b Sally's father c Sally's mother d Ali

4. Sally's father is better at fixing ....

a fans b pipes c radios d plugs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... connects pipes.

a cleaner b mechanic c plumber d builder

2. The cleaners keep the school ....

a dirty b clean c bad d ugly

3. The bus driver .... children to school.

a draws b fixes c uses d brings

4. Can you write about the pros and .... of being a mail carrier?

a cans b coats c coins d cons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

shock - cons - other - foot - hand

Every job has good things and bad things. These are pros and 1 .... Being an electrician is very good. You can fix many things. On one 2 .... you can get a lot of money. On the 3 .... hand, it can be dangerous. You can get an electric 4 ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There were many workers that made our school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need .... to connect the pipes.
   - a bus drivers
   - b mechanics
   - c plumbers
   - d garbage collectors
2. Electricians connect .... so that we can have lights.
   - a pipes
   - b electricity
   - c buses
   - d garbage

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are cleaners important?

- -

4. What do mechanics do?

- -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the mechanic fixes cars and buses

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

A mail carrier

walks - healthy

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Review

Jobs الوظائف


electrician
كهربائى


plumber
سباك

garbage collector
عامل نظافة


mail carrier
ساعي بريد


mechanic
ميكانيكى


bus driver
سائق اتوبيس

Electricity الكهرباء


electric shock
صدمة كهربائية


socket
مقبس (بريزة)


plug
فيشة


tools
ادوات


lightning
برق


electricity
كهرباء

Three cousins أولاد العم الثلاثة


experiment
يجرب / يختبر


screwdriver
مفك


architect
مهندس معمارى


tape measure
شريط قياس


blocks
لعبة المكعبات


cell phone
تليفون محمول

Help your child review Unit 5. **ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.**

on the one hand	من جهة	pros	مميزات
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى	cons	عيوب

Grammar
قواعد لغوية

This, That, These, Those

◉ للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد قريب نستخدم (this) بمعنى هذا / هذه.

- This is the screwdriver.



◉ للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد بعيد نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).



- That's the faucet.

◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.





◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (electrician) انطق الحروف (cian) مثل نطق شن فى اللغة العربية .
٢ لنطق كلمة (garbage) انطق حرف (g) الأول كما ينطق فى كلمة (goat) و حرف (g) الثانى ينطق مثل (j) فى كلمة (jam).
٣ لنطق كلمة (mechanic) انطق حرفي (ch) مثل (k).
٤ فى كلمة (plumber) حرف (b) صامت لا ينطق.
٥ لنطق كلمة (faucet) انطق حرفي (au) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (north) وانطق (cet) مثل (sit).
٦ لنطق كلمة (screwdriver) انطق الحروف (rew) مثل حرفي (ue) في كلمة (blue).
٧ كلمة (patient) المقطع الصوتى (tien) ينطق مثل كلمة (شن).
٨ كلمة (architect) الحرفين (ch) ينطقا مثل (k).
٩ كلمة (mathematician) المقطع الصوتى (cian) ينطق مثل (شن).



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

The plumber

1 My uncle is a plumber. He works all day. He fixes pipes and faucets. He is healthy. His job is very hard.

Lesson 3

An electrician

2 My father is an electrician. He studied and practiced electricity. He connects your home to electricity. He fixes sockets. It's an interesting job.

Lessons 4,5

A mail carrier

3 Amr is a mail carrier. He walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He is healthy. He speaks to a lot of people. Everyone likes to meet him.

Activity - Unit 5

A garbage collector

4 A garbage collector's job is very important. A garbage collector works hard to collect the trash. He keeps the streets clean. We all love him.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Uncle Sameh is .... years old. (50 - 40 - 30)
2. Uncle Sameh is a .... (plumber - bus driver - mechanic)
3. Uncle Sameh takes .... to school. (parents - children - teachers)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

Why - children - teacher - job

Gamal : Which ---------------------------- is the most interesting?

Emad : I think being a --.

Gamal : -- do you like this job?

Emad : Because teachers help and teach -------------------------.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I love my father. My father's name is Ahmed. He is fifty years old. He is a plumber. He fixes pipes and faucets. He works all the day. My father is very helpful.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Ali's father? --
2. What's the father's job? --

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Ali's father is .... (bad - not good - helpful)
4. He fixes .... (boots - pipes - pens)
5. Ali's father works all the .... (hour - minute - day)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... plumbers fix faucets.

   a This b That c These

2. The teacher should be .... all the time.

   a angry b patient c dangerous

3. She loved to experiment. She was very ....

   a angry b lazy c curious

4. Look, ... bird is flying.

   a these b that c those

5. A .... delivers letters and parcels.

   a plumber b mechanic c mail carrier

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - day - all - outside - Mail carriers .

- -

2. can - fast - travel - How - electricity?

- -

3. gets - A mail - very - carrier - up - early.

- -

4. put - anything - Never - a socket - into.

- -

5. The bus driver - the children - brings - school - to.

- -

Activities on Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Mahmoud is a/an ....
   a teacher　b farmer　c plumber　d electrician
2. Mahmoud is ....
   a lazy　b bad　c sad　d curious
3. Mahmoud practiced electricity for .... years.
   a three　b two　c four　d five
4. Mahmoud knows how to work safely with ....
   a pipes　b electricity　c fans　d blocks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mechanics .... our cars.
   a play　b eat　c fix　d build
2. A .... delivers your parcels.
   a teacher　b mechanic　c mail carrier　d plumber
3. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a dry　b wet　c curious　d sad
4. A garbage collector works hard to collect ....
   a food　b water　c trash　d parcels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

important - driver - drives - fix - connects

My father's friend is a bus driver. He ❶ .... buses. He brings the children to school. All the children like him. A bus ❷ .... drives to many different places. He needs the mechanic to ❸ .... the bus. His job is ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

كفر الشيخ (2024)

Heba, Habiba, and Omar are cousins. But they are all very different. When Heba was young, she was a curious child. She loved experiment. She used a screwdriver to open old cell phones and radios. When Habiba was young, she liked to play with blocks. Her favorite toy was her doll. Omar was always very patient and he liked helping other people. He was never angry with his younger brother. He explained things to him all the time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heba, Habiba, and Omar are ....

a friends b students c cousins d classmates

2. Habiba's favorite toy was her ....

a screwdriver b blocks c doll d radio

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Heba use the screwdriver? ------------------------------

4. What did Omar like doing? ------------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (These) is my screwdriver.

2. Those .... (is) the mail carrier's parcels.

3. .... (Making) sure your hands are dry.

4. .... (That) mechanics work hard.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i want to be a teacher

----

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

A garbage collector

collects - trash



Myself and others

What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟



لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة * انظر آخر الوحدة

Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Read and learn about more jobs.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقرأ عن المزيد من الوظائف.

2. Explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.

- يستكشف الطالب عن الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.

3. Know about prime numbers.

- يعرف الطالب عن الأعداد الأولية.

4. Distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.

- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة وينطقها.

5. Learn about words with the prefix dis-.

- يتعلم الطالب عن كلمات تبدأ بالبادئة (-dis).

6. Write about a job you want to do.

- يقرأ الطالب عن وظيفة يريد توليها.

Lesson 1 What do you do?









boat قارب

catch fish يصطاد سمك



fisherman صياد سمك



net شبكة



tourism سياحة



guide* مرشد سياحى





hotel فندق



transportation المواصلات

Help your child learn about different industries. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصناعات المختلفة.





farmer فلاح



pick يقطف





school مَدرسة



librarian أمينة مكتبة



teacher مُدرسة



early	مبكرًا	history	تاريخ
library	مكتبة	information	معلومات
factory	مصنع	nutrients	مواد غذائية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتنى بـ	looked after
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained
turn	يدور / يلف	turned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
catch	يصطاد	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
sell	يبيع	sold

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس مجموعة من الصناعات والامور المرتبطة بكل صناعة كالعاملين بها واماكن عملهم وطبيعة عملهم كالآتى:

Industry الصناعة	Who? من؟	Where? أين؟	What? ماذا؟
Fishing	fisherman	on the sea	catches fish / sells fish
Tourism	guide	hotels / outside	explains the history / tells tourists interesting stories
Farming	farmer	farm	grows vegetables and fruit and looks after them
Education	teachers librarians	school	teaches children looks after books helps children find information



Study the following

1. **A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.**
   - يخرج الصياد فى قاربه ويصطاد سمك.
2. **A fisherman sells fish in the market.**
   - يبيع الصياد السمك فى السوق.
3. **A farmer grows oranges and looks after the trees.**
   - يزرع الفلاح برتقال ويعتنى بالاشجار.
4. **A farmer sends a lot of fruit to the factory to make orange juice.**
   - يرسل الفلاح الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لعمل عصير برتقال.
5. **A guide works in the tourism industry.**
   - يعمل المرشد السياحى فى صناعة السياحة.
6. **A guide explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.**
   - يشرح المرشد السياحى التاريخ ويخبر السائحين بكثير من المعلومات الشيقة عن الأماكن التى يزورنها.
7. **A librarian works in a school library.**
   - يعمل أمين المكتبة فى مكتبة المدرسة.
8. **A librarian looks after the books.**
   - يعتنى أمين المكتبة بالكتب.
9. **A librarian helps children find the information they need.**
   - يساعد أمين المكتبة الأطفال أن يجدوا المعلومات التى يحتاجونها.
10. **An industry is a business that produces a specific type of things or gives a special kind of service.**
    - الصناعة هى الأعمال التجارية التى تنتج نوع معين من الأشياء أو تقدم خدمة من نوع خاص.



1 Listen and read. What jobs do these people do?

استمع واقرأ. ما الوظائف التى يقوم بها هولاء الأشخاص؟



استمع إلى النص:

1- I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

2- I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.



3- I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

4- I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

2 Listen again and answer:

استمع (للنص السابق) مرة أخرى واجب:

1- Who works in a school?
A librarian.

2- Who works outside?
....

3- Who works on the sea?
....

4- Who grows food?
....

Help your child read and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Write the words under the pictures: اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

education - farming - ~~fishing~~ - tourism


1 fishing


2 ....


3 ....


4 ....

4 Look and write. Which industry are the words connected to? Can you add more words to the table?

انظر واكتب. اى من الكلمات ترتبط بالصناعة؟ هل يمكنك إضافة كلمات آخرى بالجدول؟

animals - teachers - hotels - nets - transportation - library - trees - boats

farming	
fishing	
tourism	
education	

Help your child sort the words. ساعد طفلك فى تصنيف الكلمات.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Adel works in the .... industry.
   a education b fishing c tourism d farming
2. Adel .... the history to tourists.
   a writes b reads c explains d draws
3. Adel works as a ....
   a farmer b librarian c fisherman d guide
4. Adel works outside and can see .... places.
   a famous b old c small d boring

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... catches fish.
   a guide b fisherman c farmer d librarian
2. The teacher works in the .... industry.
   a education b fishing c tourism d farming
3. A .... helps me in the library. بنى سويف - إدارة ببا (2024)
   a farmer b fisherman c librarian d guide
4. My father grows vegetables and fruits on his farm. He is a / an ....
   a farmer b engineer c guide d librarian

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sells - homes - wakes - catches - farmer

My uncle is a fisherman. He ❶ .... up very early every day.He goes out on his boat and ❷ .... fish. In the afternoon, he comes back and ❸ .... fish in the market. His fish go to the restaurants and ❹ .... all over the world.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Ali. I'm a farmer. I **grow** oranges. All year I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit and send a lot of the fruits to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of oranges to the supermarket.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**grow**" means ....

   a feed   b live   c plant   d catch

2. Ali sells some oranges to the ....

   a market   b library   c school   d supermarket

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ali look after his trees?

- -

4. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

- -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

a guide explains the history

- -

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

The farmer

pick - grow trees

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

Lesson 2 ★ CLIL: Science




استمع إلى المفردات:


cut down يقطع


mango مانجو


money نقود

Non-renewable غير متجدد


oil بترول


gas غاز


coal فحم






wave energy طاقة الأمواج

wind energy طاقة الرياح


solar energy طاقة شمسية

Help your child learn about energy resources. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مصادر الطاقة.

Other words كلمات أخرى

wood	خشب	cause pollution	تسبب تلوث
pros	مميزات	right	صح
cons	عيوب	wrong	خطأ
sources / resources	مصادر	run out	ينفذ (ينتهى)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يملك	had
grow	ينمو	grew
burn	يحرق/ يحترق	burnt

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
eat	يأكل	ate
sell	يبيع	sold
give	يعطى	gave
cut down	يقطع / يُزيل	cut down



Definitions تعريفات

Renewable متجدد
It can grow again or never run out.
يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنفذ أبدًا.

Non- renewable غير متجدد
It can run out or never grow again.
يمكن أن تنفذ أو لا تنمو مجددًا.



Study the following

➤ ندرس فى هذا الدرس المصادر المتجددة وغير المتجددة للطاقة:

1. المصادر المتجددة (Renewable resources) هى المصادر التى لا تنتهى والموجودة دائماً.
2. المصادر غير المتجددة (Non-renewable resources) هى المصادر التى ستنتهى بالتأكيد لأننا نستخدمها وسوف تنفذ:

Renewable متجددة		Non-renewable غير متجددة	
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	oil	بترول
wave energy	طاقة الأمواج	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز



1 Read. Is a mango tree renewable or non-renewable?

اقرأ. هل شجرة المانجو مصدر متجدد أو غير متجدد؟


استمع إلى النص:

Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood." She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.



Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."

2 Read again and answer the questions:

اقرأ مرة اخرى وأجب على الاسئلة :

1. Why does Malak cut down the mango tree? ....
2. What are the cons of cutting down the mango tree? ....
3. What do you think of what Malak did? Was she right or wrong? ....
4. If you were Malak, would you cut the mango tree? ....

3 We make electricity from energy sources. Match the energy sources to the pictures:

نولد الكهرباء من مصادر الطاقة. صل مصدر الطاقة بالصور

1. oil •
2. wave energy •
3. coal •
4. solar energy •
5. wind energy •
6. gas •

a   b   c

d   e   f

4 Write each energy source in the table:

اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة وصنفه في الجدول الآتى:

Renewable متجدد	Non-renewable غير متجدد



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My uncle grows all kinds of ....

a potatoes b fruit c coal d vegetables

2. The mango tree is .... my uncle's house.

a under b behind c next to d above

3. He sold the wood to get ....

a money b clothes c trees d energy

4. My uncle was .... because there weren't any mangoes or wood.

a happy b sad c excited d nervous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Coal, oil and gas are .... energy resources.

a renewable b funny c lazy d non-renewable

2. People cut down the trees to .... the wood.

a buy b grow c sell d draw

3. The .... energy is a renewable energy.

a wood b gas c coal d solar

4. Plant this seed. It will grow into a ....

a table b bed c tree d chair

5. You need to cut down the .... to get wood.

a seeds b houses c trees d money

6. Non-renewable energy sources never .... again.

a grow b run out c burn d buy

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

down - trees - sold - no - happy

My friend Amr needed money to buy things. He had a lot of ❶ .... in the garden. He cut ❷ .... a lot of trees. He ❸ .... them. He was very sad because there were ❹ .... trees in the garden.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Energy is very important in our life. Cars, trains, ovens and fridges need energy. There are two types of energy. Non-renewable energy is one of them. **It** can run out or never grow again. Oil, coal and gas are examples of non-renewable energy resources. The other type is renewable energy. It can grow again or never run out. Wind, wave, and solar energy are examples of renewable energy resources.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to .... energy.

   a renewable   b solar   c non-renewable   d wave

2. .... is an example of non-renewable energy.

   a Waves   b Oil   c Wind   d The sun

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the two types of energy? -

4. What are the things in your house that need energy? - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Wind energy

resources - renewable

- -

- -

- -

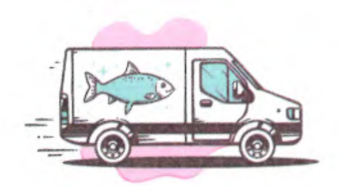
- -

Lesson 3

★ Fresh Fish Van
★ Pronunciation & Math




استمع إلى المفردات:


fresh fish van
شاحنة سمك طازج


fisherman صياد


grandpa جد

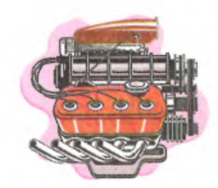

village قرية




sad حزين


disappointed مُحبط


10 عشرة


engine* محرك


van شاحنة


fish سمكة


the sun الشمس

Help your child know new words. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كلمات جديدة.

Other words كلمات أخرى

in front of	أمام	problem	مشكلة
opinion	رأى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
shout	يصيح	shouted
skim	يقرأ سريعًا (يتصفح)	skimmed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
get	يحصل على	got
hear	يسمع	heard
have fun	يستمتع بوقته	had fun

1 Skim the story quickly. Who are the main characters?

تصفح القصة سريعا؟ من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

Fresh fish van

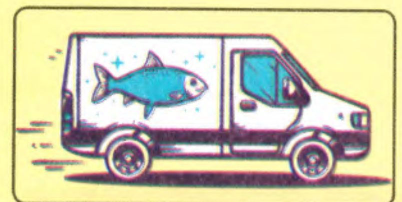
استمع إلى النص:

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".



One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.



Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine.

"It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed!

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

2 How much do you remember? Answer. Then read and check:

كم مقدار ما تتذكره؟ أجب. ثم اقرأ وتأكد:

1. What does the old man sell? He sells ------------------------------
2. Why was the old man sad and disappointed?

   Because he couldn't ------------------------------

   ----
3. Why do you think the old man was surprised? Because ------------------------------

----

3 Match and write

صل واكتب:

fish - sun - ten - van

❶ ❷ ❸ ❹

....

4 Read the story again and answer. Use the words in Exercise 3:

أقرأ القصة مرة أخرى واجب. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين ٣:

1. What is hot?

   The sun.
2. What does the old man drive? - ماذا يقود الرجل المسن؟

   ----
3. What does the old man sell? - ماذا يبيع الرجل المسن؟

   ----
4. How many fish does the old man give Mom? - كم سمكة اعطى الرجل المسن للأم؟

   ----

5 Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

أقرأ وقل . اغلق كتابك. هل تستطيع تذكر هذه الجمل؟

1. You can have fun in the sun.
2. There's a man in a van.
3. He sells fresh fish from the river.
4. There are ten men standing on one leg.

Pronunciation



استمع إلى المفردات:



★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل



fish سمكة



ten عشرة



van شاحنة



sun الشمس

١ - ندرس فى هذا الدرس الصوت (/i/) و (/e/) ونلاحظ الفرق بينهما كما فى كلمتى ten وfish وكلمتى ten / tin حيث نلاحظ فى نطق (tin) أن (in) تنطق مثل كلمة (in) بمعنى فى لكن (en) تنطق مثل (en) فى (pen).

٢ - ندرس أيضا الصوت /æ/ و /ʌ/ والفرق بينهما كما فى الكلمتين van و sun حيث تشبه كلمة van نطق كلمة man وكلمة sun تشبه نطق كلمة bus.

٣ - وندرس أيضا بادئة الكلمات (dis) والتى تعطى معنى النفى.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
disagree	لا يوافق	disagreed
disappear	يختفى	disappeared
disappoint	يُحبِط	disappointed

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
dislike	لا يحب	disliked
disobey	لا يطيع	disobeyed

1 Find more words in the text with the same sound:

اوجد كلمات أخرى فى النص بنفس الصوت:

sun	van	fish	ten
bus	man	fin	pen
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

Help your child learn about short vowels. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.

2 Look and write. Complete the sentences: انظر واكتب- أكمل الجمل:

disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed

1


The boy is ....
He didn't pass the test.

2


She ....
ice cream.

3


These friends
....





I'm sorry because
I .... my mom.





The rabbit .... from
the hat.

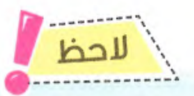
MATH

Prime numbers الاعداد الأولية

- A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.

ندرس فى هذا الدرس العدد الأولى وهو العدد الذى يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد مثل:

2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 ....



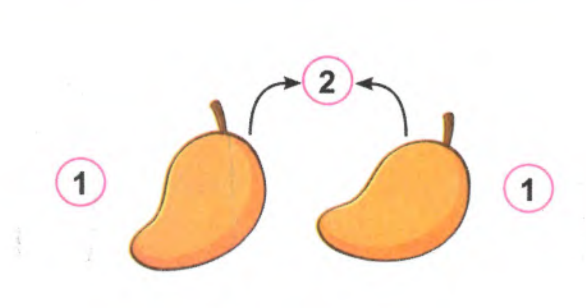
– العدد ٤ ليس عدد أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى رقم ٢.

العدد ٩ غير أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى ٣

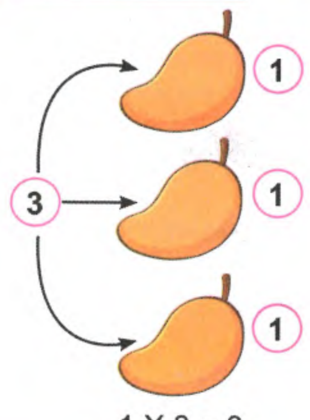
– لاحظ الأعداد الأولية من **1 - 100**

(2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97)

1 Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



1 X 2 = 2



1 X 3 = 3

2 Circle the prime numbers: ضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولى:

10 12 3 89 43

5 9 37 4 13

3 Add these numbers. If the answer is a prime number, write it in red: اجمع الآتى وإذا كان الناتج عدد أولى اكتبه بالأحمر:

1. 6 + 7 = ...
2. 37 + 20 = ...
3. 70 + 9 = ...
4. 40 + 4 = ...

Find out

The smallest prime numbers are:

- اصغر الأعداد الأولية هى:

2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23 and 29.

Is number 1 a prime number or not?

- هل رقم ١ عدد أولى ام لا؟



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy is a bad boy. He .... his mom.

a disappeared   b loved   c paid   d disobeyed

2. The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.

a disappeared   b disappointed   c disobeyed   d disliked

3. We .... the sound of the engine.

a drove   b gave   c heard   d burnt

4. The mom could .... the old van's engine.

a fix   b shout   c teach   d play

5. My uncle is a .... and he can fix old engines.

a teacher   b fisherman   c mechanic   d guide

6. Can you .... this story quickly?

a shout   b skim   c fix   d jump

7. I can't find my cat. It ....

a disappeared   b disappointed   c disliked   d disagreed

8. The fisherman .... the boy ten fresh fish.

a started   b gave   c taught   d fixed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pass - disappointed - sorry - disobeyed - disagreed

I visited my friend Sameh yesterday. He was (1) .... because he didn't (2) .... the test. He didn't study well. He (3) ....his mom. At the end he was very (4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, my brother and I saw an old man from the balcony. He couldn't drive his van. He was sad and disappointed. I ran quickly to help him. My father was a mechanic and he taught **me** how to fix engines. I looked at the old engine and started to fix it. Then, his van was fixed. The man was happy and gave me some fresh juice.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**me**" refers to the ....

a old man b father c writer d brother

2. The old man gave the writer some fresh ....

a fish b juice c fruit d food

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the old man disappointed?

----

4. Who taught the writer to fix engines?

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

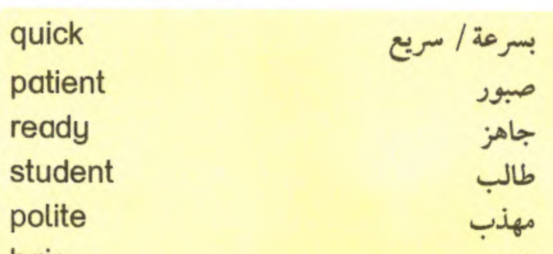
the rabbit disappeared from the hat

Lessons 4&5 Writing Project





استمع إلى المفردات:



quick	بسرعة / سريع	world	العالم
patient	صبور	different	مختلف
ready	جاهز	hard work	عمل شاق
student	طالب	life	حياة
polite	مهذب	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
hair	شعر	favorite	مفضل
advice	نصيحة	shelf	رف
teacher	مدرسة / مدرس	surprising questions	أسئلة مفاجأة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
change	يغير	changed
encourage	يشجع	encouraged
respect	يحترم	respected
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يفكر	thought
teach	يعلم	taught
get off	ينزل من	got off



Study the following

1. I want to be a teacher. - أريد أن اصبح مدرس.
2. Students always ask surprising questions. - دائمًا ما يسأل الطلاب اسئلة مفاجئة.
3. Teachers need to think quickly. - يحتاج المدرسون أن يفكروا بسرعة.
4. They need to encourage their students. - يحتاجوا أن يشجعوا طلابهم.

5 They need to be very patient. - يحتاجو أن يتحلوا بالصبر.

6 A teacher can change their students' lives. - يستطيع المدرس أن يغير حياة طلابه.

7 A good teacher is always ready to learn. - المدرس الجيد يكون جاهز دائمًا للتعلم.

8 Everyone in the class knows different things.

- يعرف كل شخص فى الفصل أشياء مختلفة.

9 I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.

- احترم أمينة المكتبة. أعيد كتبي علي الرف.

10 I respect the cleaner. I don't throw trash.

- احترم عامل النظافة.لا ألقي القمامة (علي الأرض).

لاحظ: عندما لا نعرف جنس الفاعل(رجل أو انثى) نستخدم ضمير جمع يعود على الاسم:

- Teachers change their students' lives.

1 Think and answer: فكر واجب:

1. What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?

- ما هى الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة فى وظيفة المدرس؟



استمع إلى النص:

When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

For a teacher, every day is different.

Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.



Everyone in the class knows different things.

2 Read the poster. Do you agree or disagree?

اقرأ البوستر، هل تتفق أم تختلف؟



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw trash.



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.

How to show respect

كيف اظهر الاحترام

I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus.



I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We should show respect to the .... around us.

ⓐ animals ⓑ people ⓒ birds ⓓ children

2. I don't throw the .... in the street.

ⓐ trash ⓑ bus ⓒ shelf ⓓ cleaner

3. I say thank you to the bus driver when I .... off the bus.

ⓐ take ⓑ get ⓒ turn ⓓ land

4. I put the books on the .... in the library.

ⓐ door ⓑ shelf ⓒ window ⓓ floor

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I respect the teacher, I .... to him carefully.

ⓐ get ⓑ listen ⓒ put ⓓ throw

2. We .... respect to the people around us.

ⓐ disagree ⓑ show ⓒ talk ⓓ work

3. A teacher can change students' ....

ⓐ hair ⓑ things ⓒ teeth ⓓ lives

4. A good teacher is always ready to ....

ⓐ sleep ⓑ play ⓒ learn ⓓ drive

5. Teachers should .... their students.

ⓐ encourage ⓑ dislike ⓒ throw ⓓ shout

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - patient - encourage - lives - parents

Teaching is one of the best jobs in the world. The teachers need to ❶ .... their students. The teachers need to be ❷ .... A good teacher is always ❸ .... to learn. A teacher can change the students' ❹ ....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

do you want to be a teacher

- -

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The teacher's job

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

hard - change

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Fishing صيد السمك


catch fish يصطاد سمك


net شبكة


fisherman صياد سمك


boat قارب

Tourism industry صناعة السياحة


tourism سياحة


guide مرشد سياحي


hotel فندق


transportation المواصلات

Farming الزراعة


farmer فلاح


pick يقطف

Education التعليم


school مدرسة


teacher مدرسة


librarian أمينة مكتبة

Help your child revise Unit 6. **ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة ٦.**

Energy Resources مصادر الطاقة

Renewable متجدد



wave energy
طاقة الأمواج



solar energy
طاقة شمسية



wind energy
طاقة الرياح

Non-renewable غير متجدد



oil بترول



coal فحم



gas غاز



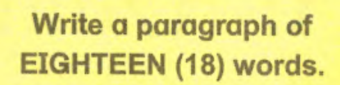
ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ انطق كلمة (guide) مثل كلمة (ride) مع اختلاف أول صوت.

٢ فى كلمة (education) تنطق الحروف (tion) مثل (شن) فى اللغة العربية.

٣ لنطق كلمة (engine) ينطق حرف (i) مثل حرف (i) فى كلمة (bin) وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق.





Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

The farmer

1 I'm a farmer. I wake up early every day. I pick fruit. I grow trees. I keep a lot of animals. I look after animals.

Lesson 2

Wind energy

2 Wind energy is important for us. It's a renewable resource. The wind energy produces electricity. It can grow again or never run out. We don't need to burn this resource.

Lessons 4,5

The teacher's job

3 I want to be a teacher. The teacher works at school. The teacher works for many hours. It's hard work. The teacher can change their students' lives.

Activity - Unit 6

The librarian

4 My sister is a librarian. She works in a school. She looks after all the books. Students like her very much. They respect her. They put their books back on the shelf.

Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The teacher's job is very .... (easy - hard - sad)
2. A good teacher is always ready to .... (sell - drive - learn)
3. Everyone in the .... knows different things. (park - class - shop)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

parents - polite - teaches - respect

Ahmed : Do you ------------------------------ people around you?

Youssef : Yes, I should be ------------------------------ .

Ahmed : Who ------------------------------ you to respect people?

Youssef : My ------------------------------ teach me.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر:

Fishing is my favorite hobby. I often go fishing without catching anything, but I'm not sad. I get up in the morning and walk to the river. I catch fish. Then, I go back home. I give the fish to my mother. She is happy and cooks delicious fish for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What's your favorite hobby? ------------------------------
2. Who do you give the fish to? ------------------------------

Choose the correct answer:

3. I get up in the morning and walk to the .... (lake - sea - river)
4. I often go .... without catching anything. (swimming - playing - fishing)
5. My mother is happy and cooks delicious .... for us. (meat - fish - rice)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... looks after all books.

   a farmer　　b librarian　　c guide

2. Gas .... a non-renewable energy.

   a were　　b is　　c are

3. Teachers need to be ....

   a lazy　　b bad　　c patient

4. The guide works in the .... industry.

   a farming　　b energy　　c tourism

5. We .... the sound of the engine.

   a drove　　b gave　　c heard

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - food - Farmers - the.

   ----

2. throw - I - trash - don't.

   ----

3. works - a school - Who - in?

   ----

4. respect - I - bus - the - driver.

   ----

5. sells - fish - A fisherman - the market - in.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My grandfather is a ....

a guide b farmer c plumber d mechanic

2. He .... up early every day.

a sells b sleeps c picks d wakes

3. My grandfather grows ....

a fruit and vegetables b wheat and corn

c rice and sugar d flowers and trees

4. He sends a lot of the fruit to the ....

a factory b market c park d school

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A teacher needs to .... quickly.

a eat b think c play d see

2. A fisherman works .... the sea.

a under b next c of d on

3. The solar energy is a .... energy.

a renewable b non-renewable c coal d bad

4. A fisherman .... fish.

a catches b plays c connects d fixes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bus driver - respect - trash - get - world

There are many people around us. We should show ❶ .... to them. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw ❷ .... I respect the ❸ ...., I say thank you when I ❹ .... off the bus.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Nada. My mom is a teacher. She really likes her job. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives, so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Everyone in the class knows different things.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada's mom is ....

a nurse b doctor c teacher d vet

2. Teacher works for .... hours.

a little b few c many d minutes

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do teachers need to be very patient? ------------------------------

4. What makes a good teacher? ------------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Sara and Malak .... (**has**) a tree.
2. Coal .... (**are**) a non-renewable energy.
3. Hisham .... (**go**) to the market every day.
4. Fishermen .... (**catches**) fish in the sea.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

why do you want to be a doctor ------------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الوحدة

The librarian

respect - shelf

Review 2



Objectives of the Review 2

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجوده بالوحدات من ٤ إلى٦.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

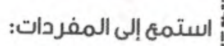
- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 4 - 6.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ الى٦.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 4 - 5 & 6

1 Listen and write the words: استمع واكتب الكلمات:







1- ....


2- ....


3- ....


4- ....


5- ....


6- ....


7- ....


8- ....


9- ....


10- ....



11- ....


12- ....

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:

انظر للصور واجب عن الاسئلة:

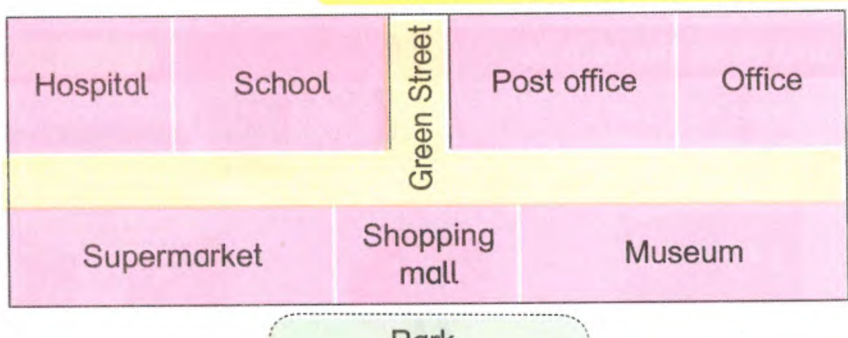





1. What's the mechanic doing? ....
2. What's the mail carrier doing? ....
3. What's the electrician doing? ....
4. What's the driver doing? ....

3 Look and correct the sentences: انظر وصحح الجمل:

انظر إلى هذه الخريطة ثم صحح الجمل الآتية كما بالمثال:



Park

5. The hospital is between the school. The hospital is next to the school.
6. The school is next to the museum. ....
7. The park is under the shopping mall. ....
8. The supermarket is behind the school. ....

4 Listen. Write the start and finish: استمع واكتب البداية والنهاية:

استمع للنص الآتى واكتب البداية والنهاية فى الخريطة السابقة:

استمع إلى النص: 

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

1. Go straight ahead. Turn right, go past the school. It's on the right.
2. Go straight ahead, keep going. Go past the post office. It's on the left.
3. Walk past the post office and turn right. The entrance is on the left, on Green Street.

1. Start: Green Street Finish: hospital
2. Start: .... Finish: office
3. Start: .... Finish: ....

5 Match the sentences to the picture. Then write this is, that is, these are, or those are: صل الجمل بالصور ثم اكتب اسم الأشارة المناسب:

1. .... a screwdriver.
2. .... my tape measure.
3. .... our tools.
4. .... my tools.

a 

b 

c   1

d  

Lesson 2 Units 4 - 5 & 6

PRONUNCIATION

1 Underline the stressed syllables in these jobs:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الوظائف الاتية :

1- doctor 2- plumber 3- collector

4- driver 5- teacher 6- mechanic

2 Point and say. Then write these words: اشر وقل ثم اكتب هذه الكلمات:






❶ .... ❷ .... ❸ .... ❹ ....

TERM 1: PROJECT

1 Read and think about the project: إقرأ ثم فكر فى عمل المشروع:

Think about what job you want to do when you're older. Think about how it helps the community. Write a message to yourself in the future.

2 Think about what you know and what you enjoy. Complete the diagram:

فكر فيما تعرفه وما تستمتع به. أكمل الجدول:

All about me

My favorite school subjects

Hobbies I enjoy

Industries I think are interesting

3 Read, think, and complete: اقرأ وفكر وأكمل:

What do you want to be?	
What do you need to do this job? Think about: • Do you need to go to university? • Do you need to practice?	
Where does someone with this job work?	
How does this job help the community?	

4 Work in a group. Present your job: اعمل فى مجموعات وقدم وظيفتك:



5 Look, write, and complete. Write a message to yourself in the future: انظر واكتب واكمل: اكتب رسالة عن نفسك فى المستقبل:

Dear ....,

I will work in a .... I want to be a .... because

....

....

I need to .... to be a good ....

I will help people ....

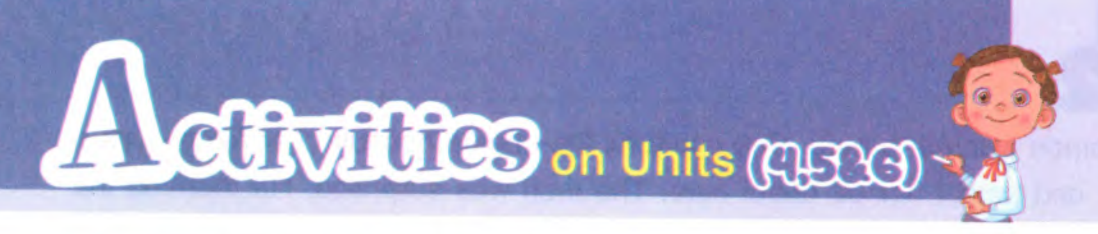
I hope you think your job is interesting.

Lots of love,

....

Put the letter in an envelope and then put it somewhere safe.

Read it when you're older.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Amr is a/an ....
   a plumber b mechanic c guide d electrician
2. Amr studied .... at school.
   a math b electricity c science d English
3. Amr uses a .... to fix electricity.
   a block b radio c screwdriver d tape measure
4. Amr is happy when he .... an electrical problem.
   a fixes b watches c climbs d keeps

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mail carrier is .... because he walks all day.
   a unhealthy b weak c healthy d rich
2. The mechanic .... cars.
   a fixes b plays c eats d draws
3. Supermarkets .... food to customers.
   a sell b eat c drink d draw
4. Never .... anything electric with wet hands.
   a respect b encourage c touch d travel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hospital - front - flowers - next - between

I live in a big house. It's ❶ .... to my school. There is a park in ❷ .... of the school. There are lots of ❸ .... and trees in the park. There's ❹ .... behind the park.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. The fisherman sells fresh fish every day. One day, he was in front of an old woman's house. The van's engine stopped working, so the man couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.



The woman wanted to help. She could fix the engine because her father was a mechanic and taught her all about cars. The man was surprised. He thanked the woman and gave her ten fresh fish.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fisherman drives around the ....

a city b town c village d countryside

2. The woman could fix the van's ....

a wheels b engine c windows d lights

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

- -

4. What did the man give the woman?

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A librarian .... (**work**) in the library.
2. .... (**This**) mechanics work in the repair shop.
3. Samy .... (**walking**) to school every day.
4. .... (**Do**) play football in the class.
5. My school is .... (**next**) the park and the supermarket.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how fast can electricity travel -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A teacher

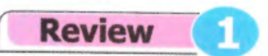
students - helps

- -
- -
- -
- -

Listening Material

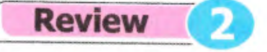
نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب المدرسى



1- Listen and write the words:

1. seeds
2. watermelon
3. fennec fox
4. crocodile
5. emperor
6. leaf
7. onions
8. shoot
9. snake
10. spider
11. roots
12. sugarcane
13. camel
14. palace
15. flower



1- Listen and write the words:

1. kitchen
2. mail carrier
3. supermarket
4. garbage collector
5. bedroom
6. plumber
7. living room
8. balcony
9. mechanic
10. bathroom
11. hospital
12. library

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى وحدات كتاب





Lesson (1)

Farmers are good for our country. They produce many things. They can grow onions and carrots. They raise chickens. We can see healthy food in Egypt.

Lesson (3)

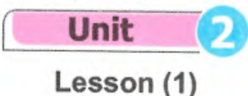
Once, there was a king who lived in a big palace. He had a lot of gold. There was a gardener called Ali who worked for the king. Ali looked after the trees and flowers. Ali found a bag of gold coins. He was an honest man. So he gave it to the king. The king was happy and gave Ali some gold coins.

Al Azhar Test

My dad is a scientist. He likes walking in the desert, but the desert is very hot.

Activity (1) - Unit 1

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It was about the emperor who lived in a beautiful palace. He gave pots and seeds to the gardeners to grow plants. Cheng was only good and honest. Cheng was the next emperor.



Lesson (1)

Crocodiles are huge and scary. They live in the river. They eat meat and fish. They control the number of small animals.

Lesson (2)

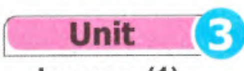
Camels are strong animals. They are perfect for the desert. They can carry people and things to cross the desert. Camels' milk is very delicious. We can use the camels' fur to make clothes.

Al Azhar Test

Horses are very fast animals. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to thirty years.

Activity (2) - Unit 2

My uncle has two horses in the garden. The garden is next to his house. He likes his horses. These horses look beautiful. They have large beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live from 25 to 30 years. They need people to look after them.



Unit 3

Lesson (1)

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. Tomatoes need water to grow and the roots grow under the soil.

Lesson (4&5)

Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make many things. They used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus grows near the Nile.

Al Azhar Test

Samir is my friend. We go to school by bus. Samir wants to be a doctor, but I want to be a teacher.

Activity (3) - Unit 3

There are different plant habitats. Each plant has its habitat. For example, papyrus needs river habitat because it needs a lot of water to grow. Orange trees need agricultural habitat.

Review 1

Activity (4)

Camels are strong and they can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. They have delicious milk. Camels are good animals for the desert.

Unit 4

Lesson (1)

My father moved to a new apartment yesterday because he had a new job. There are three rooms. My favorite room is the living room with a big balcony. My mom likes the kitchen. She can cook food quietly.

Lesson (2)

I live in a big town. There are lots of public places near my house. The supermarket is behind my house. I can buy our food. Next to the supermarket, there's a hospital. There's also the shopping mall between the post office and the park.

Lesson (3 part 1)

My friend Hany lives in a village in Giza. It's next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. He has a small family. He has one brother. His name is Samir. Hany's house is the biggest house in the village. There are tall trees and plants behind Hany's house

Lesson (3 part 2)

I like riding boats in the summer. I go with my father to the Nile. My father works on a tourist boat. On the boat, I can see many interesting places and meet people from all over the world. My father speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

Lessons (4 & 5)

My friend Mona works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

Al Azhar Test

Ahmed is a good boy. He lives in a small village. He goes to a primary school. Ahmed's school is next to the hospital.

Activity (5) - Unit 4

Nada loves her town. It is big, and it has offices, schools, parks, and many other places. Nada's town is clean and quiet. It is a good place to live.



Unit 5

Lesson (1)

I'm Fatma. My family were busy yesterday. My mom fixed the faucets in the kitchen. My sister took out the trash. My dad was fixing his car. I gave the parcel to the mail carrier.

Lesson (3)

Amr, Fatma and Farid are cousins. When Amr was a child, he wanted to be an electrician. He always carried a screwdriver. Fatma wanted to be an architect. Farid wanted to be a teacher.

Lessons (4&5)

My name is Sally. I live in Suez. My father is a plumber. When he was young, he wanted to be a bus driver, but he was better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars. My brother Ali is an electrician. My mother is a teacher. She is very patient and likes children.

Al Azhar Test

Uncle Sameh is forty years old. He is a bus driver. He takes children to school early.

Activity (6)

My brother Mahmoud is a curious electrician. He studied and practiced for three years before he became an electrician. He knows how to work safely with electricity.



Unit 6

Lesson (1)

My friend Adel is a guide. He works in the tourism industry. He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit. He always works outside and sees many famous places.

Lesson (2)

My uncle has a big garden. He grows all kinds of fruit. There's a beautiful mango tree next to his house. One day, he wanted some money, so he cut down the tree and sold the wood. He was sad because there were no mangoes or wood.

Lessons (4&5)

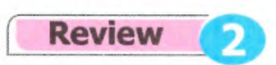
We should show respect to the people around us. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw the trash in the street. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the librarian. I put the books on the shelf in the library.

Al Azhar Test

The teacher's job is very hard. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Everyone in the class knows different things.

Activity (7)- Unit 6

My grandfather is a farmer. He wakes up early every day. He grows fruit and vegetables. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. He keeps animals and birds, too.



Review 2

Activity (8)

My friend Amr is an electrician. He studied electricity at school. He connects homes to electricity. Amr fixes lights. He uses a screwdriver to fix electricity. Amr loves his job very much. Amr is happy when he fixes an electrical problem.





PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT



ملحق
تسميع المفردات
والواجب المنزلي

الصف الرابع الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Unit 1 I feel good

Lessons 



Vocabulary

غير صحى	ثمرة بطاطس ....
دجاجة	ثمرة مانجو ....
أرز	موزة ....
بصل	يتمرن ....
بطيخة	يلعب كرة قدم ....
عنب	يلعب كرة سلة ....
قصب السكر	يأكل حلوى ....
ثمرة طماطم	صحى ....
يشرب كولا	لبن ....
فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	بطيخ ....
مخفوق الحليب	الافطار ....
كرسى متحرك	الغداء ....
كرة السلة	العشاء ....
عالم	طعام مميز ....
سندوتش برجر	يأكل خضراوات ....
انواع سلطة	يلعب العاب الفيديو ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينتج	....	يعد الطعام	....
يربى حيوانات	....	يأكل	....
يزرع	....	يمارس	....
يطعم	....	يمشى	....
يشرب	....	يتكلم	....
ينظر إلى	....	يفعل	....
يبدو	....	يحب	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's .... to exercise every day.
   a healthy b unhealthy c bad d busy

2. We raise .... on our farm.
   a mangoes b chickens c milk d sugar

3. Who never .... cola?
   a drinks b does c grows d walks

4. .... food comes from our country?
   a How b Who c Which d When

5. Egyptian farmers .... rice in Egypt.
   a feed b grow c raise d practice

6. The food .... delicious. We like it.

a raises b grows c looks d eats

7. I .... a lot of sport at school.

a make b do c look d walk

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

times - Watermelon - weekend - milkshake - basketball

I like healthy food. 1 .... is my favorite fruit. Mom also makes delicious banana 2 .... I practice 3 .... at school. I practice it three 4 .... every week.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Let's .... (**going**) to the farm.
2. I don't drink cola, ... (**and**) I drink milk.
3. Samy is a good teacher .... (**but**) he helps his children.
4. I love pizza .... (**and**) I only eat one a week.
5. There are some .... (**mango**) in the market.
6. I'm very busy, ... (**and**) I like video games.
7. My father speaks English .... (**and**) he can't speak French.



Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary

أصيص زرع فارغ	معزة ....
بذور	بستانى ....
مسابقة	ملك ....
أمين	قصر ....
عناصر غذائية	امبراطور ....
قمح	صياد ....
خروف	ثمرة جوافة ....
جبنة دمياطى	مليون ....
مشهور	الف ....
فلاح	ليمون ....
حكاية شعبية	محصول ....
رجل مهم	يعيد تنظيف ....
ميت	يعيد دهان ....
يصطاد	يعيد زرع ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعيش	....	يضع	....
يعمل	....	يعطى	....
يسقى	....	يخسر	....
يقول	....	يفوز	....

.... يأخذ	....	.... يحدث	....
.... ينمو	....	.... يعتنى بـ	....
.... يحضر	....	.... يكذب	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A\An .... is someone who is like a king.

   a) engineer b) emperor c) farmer d) doctor

2. He looks after the garden. He is a ....

   a) cleaner b) nurse c) gardener d) vet

3. I like my friend because he doesn't lie and he is ....

   a) bad b) honest c) unhealthy d) lazy

4. He has a lot of money and he lives in a ....

   a) garden b) river c) pot d) palace

5. Ali is fast. He always wins the ....

   a) competition b) seeds c) cheese d) guava

6. The land in Damietta is rich in ....

   a) pizza b) cola c) juice d) nutrients

7. Domiati cheese is very ....

   a) famous b) honest c) funny d) short

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

honest - plants - watered - dead - lie

Cheng was a famous gardener. The emperor gave him seeds. He ❶ .... the seeds, but there weren't any ❷ .... The seeds were ❸ .... He was ❹ .... and became the next emperor.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is **good** in Damietta!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... catch thousands of fish.

   a Teachers   b Farmers   c Engineers   d Fishermen

2. The underlined word "**good**" means ....

   a bad   b awful   c nice   d old

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?

   ----

4. Do you think life is good in Damietta?

Unit 2 Desert animals




Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

جمل	تمساح ....
بجعة	ثعبان ....
نسر / طائر العقاب	حصان ....
عنكبوت	أقدام مسطحة ....
حشرة	فرو ....
سحلية	رمل ....
فيل	ثعلب الصحراء ....
حشائش	ماء عذب ....

Adjectives

قبيح	مزعج ....
مخيف	غاضب ....
هام	قوى ....
خطير	مدهش ....
مفيد	لذيذ ....
جميل	حريص ....
رائع / ممتاز	ضخم ....
سريع	بطئ ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.... يقيد عدد/يتحكم	....	.... يحمل	....
.... يعتقد	....	.... يعبر	....
.... يعمل	....	.... يملك	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can use camels' fur to make .... (القاهرة 2023)

   a tables b food c clothes d juice

2. The .... is a bird.

   a pelican b horse c fox d camel

3. Camels have large flat ....

   a noses b feet c eyes d ears

4. Spiders are very .... They eat insects.

   a cute b kind c nice d helpful

5. Farmers like spiders because they eat ....

   a mice b birds c snakes d insects

6. Camels are .... for the desert. (القليوبية 2023)

   a difficult b easy c perfect d kind

7. The elephant is ....

   a small b little c tiny d huge

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

heads - strong - perfect - fur - cross

Camels are amazing . They are ❶ .... animals. They help us to carry things and people to ❷ .... the desert. We can use their ❸ .... to make clothes. Camels are ❹ .... for the desert. But camels are noisy and can get angry.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A mouse is .... (**small**) than a cat.
2. A giraffe is .... (**more tall**) than a horse.
3. A snake is scarier .... (**that**) the spider.
4. Dogs are .... (**noisy**) than cats.
5. The elephant is .... (**big**) than a lion.
6. Eagles are .... (**much**) beautiful than insects.
7. Camels are .... (**perfect**) for the desert than horses.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

there are many important animals in our country

- -





Vocabulary

أوراق الشجر ....

غزال الريم ....

دولفين ....

فئران ....

قرون ....

عشب / حشائش ....

نباتات ....

فراء أصفر وأبيض ....

خائف ....

كمثرى ....

بسلة ....

الصحراء الكبرى ....

جوعان ....

دب ....

نهر ....

منقار ....

مخلب الحيوان ....

غضبان ....

كف الحيوان ....

حرارة ....

أين ؟ ....

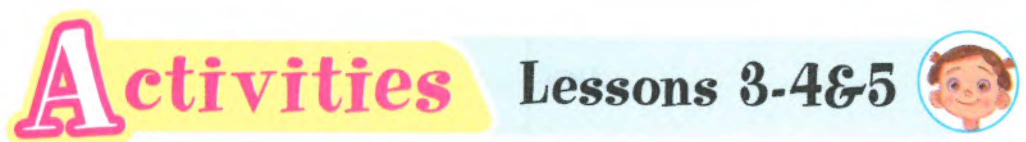
كم وزن ؟ ....

كم طول (أفقى)؟ ....

كم طول (رأسى)؟ ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصل إلى	....	يعتقد	....
يرفع	....	يأخذ	....
يشعر	....	يقول	....
يحمى	....	يمشى	....
يحتاج	....	يفقد	....
يحافظ على	....	يسمع	....
يفتح	....	ينظر إلى	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father was .... because I lost my book.

   a happy　b angry　c funny　d strong

2. I want a sandwich because I'm ....

   a amazing　b thirsty　c hungry　d sad

3. The .... is a big and strong animal.

   a pear　b bear　c mouse　d spider

4. The rhim .... has long horns.

   a fox　b camel　c horse　d gazelle

5. The fennec fox lives in the Sahara ....

   a Forest　b Desert　c Sea　d River

6. **A:** What .... is the rhim gazelle? **B:** It's yellow and white.

a color b time c age d heavy

7. The fennec fox's .... keeps it warm.

a ears b fur c leg d horn

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - smaller - mice - longer - hear

The fennec fox is a desert animal. It's ❶ .... than other foxes. It has big ears to ❷ .... insects. It eats insects, lizards and small ❸ .... It has thick fur to keep ❹ .... at night.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I read the story of a pelican and the bear. They both were hungry. They saw a big, juicy fish in the river. The bear was stronger than the pelican. The bear was kind. He gave the fish to the pelican. The bear felt happy at the end.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bear was .... than the pelican.

a stronger b taller c happier d scarier

2. The bear and the pelican were in the ....

a zoo b river c park d club

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in two sentences.

- -

4. How did the bear feel at the end?

- -

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

where do rhim gazelles live

- -

October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. There are a lot of .... in our country.

a fish b birds c insects d animals

2. Snakes and crocodiles are ....

a dangerous b cute c small d short

3. Snakes and crocodiles eat ....

a insects b vegetables c birds d plants

4. This .... the number of these animals.

a grows b controls c lives d takes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Egyptian food is ....

a delicious b scary c ugly d noisy

2. The eagle and the pelican are ....

a insects b birds c plants d fish

3. Camels are .... than horses.

a smaller b taller c weaker d shorter

4. The emperor lives in a big ....

a palace b garden c park d school

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

busy - more - practices - video - unhealthy

My cousin is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He ❶ .... basketball three times every week. He drinks ❷ .... water. He doesn't play ❸ .... games because he's very ❹ .... He plays basketball in the park.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

We have three meals in a day. They are breakfast, lunch and dinner. They are important for our body. We should eat the right food in each meal. We should drink water and milk, too. Drinking milk helps our teeth and bones to be strong. Teachers and parents should teach children about the healthy and unhealthy food. Vegetables and fruits are important in our food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should eat the .... food in each meal.

a right b wrong c unhealthy d bad

2. Drinking milk helps our .... to be strong.

a hands b teeth c feet d ears

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many meals are there in a day?

- -

4. What should teachers and parents teach children?

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A snake is .... (long) than a lizard.
2. Hisham practices football, ... (and) he doesn't play well.
3. Eagles are .... (little) beautiful than giraffes.
4. I don't drink cola .... (but) other unhealthy drinks.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how long does a camel live -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Rhim gazelle

Guiding questions

1- Where does it live?
2- What does it eat?

- -

- -

- -

October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Horses have large beautiful ....

a legs b mouths c eyes d ears

2. Horses eat grass and drink fresh ....

a juice b water c tea d cola

3. Horses can live in the ....

a desert b house c river d palace

4. Horses need .... to look after them.

a insects b people c animals d birds

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Camels are noisy and they can get ....

a healthy b angry c large d useful

2. I drink .... for breakfast.

a rice b milk c potatoes d chicken

3. Breakfast, lunch and dinner are ....

a clothes b colors c meals d subjects

4. Crocodiles are scary and ....

a small b huge c delicious d cute

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

beaks - scary - claws - eat - favorite

I like animals. My 1 .... animal is the bear. Bears 2 .... fish. They use paws and 3 .... to catch fish. My brother doesn't like bears. He thinks they are 4 ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's 20 centimeters tall. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fennec fox loses heat from its ....

   a nose   b ears   c mouth   d legs

2. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.

   a taller   b bigger   c smaller   d longer

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does the fennec fox live?

   ----

4. How heavy is the fennec fox?

   ----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The bear is .... (**strong**) than the pelican.
2. I want to play football, ... (**and**) I'm sick today.
3. Crocodiles are .... (**much**) dangerous than fish.
4. My uncle grows vegetables .... (**but**) fruit on his farm.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how heavy is the fennec fox

----

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Desert animals

Guiding words
camels - perfect

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

Lessons 



Vocabulary

بذرة	شجرة البرتقال ....
زهرة اللوتس	ورقة شجر ....
نبات القصب	تربة ....
زهرة الأقحوان	فسيلة/نبتة ....
دوار عباد الشمس	جذر النبات ....
نبات الفول	بيئة صحراوية ....
شجرة السنط	بيئة زراعية ....
وردة	انهار وبحيرات ....
بلكونة	باذنجان ....
ضوء الشمس	فراشة ....
بالداخل	حقيبة سفر ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يموت	....	يجد	....
يزرع	....	يصبح	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... big is the flower?

   a Where b Who c When d How

2. Lotus flowers grow near the .... They need a lot of water.

   a river b desert c sand d village

3. There isn't much .... in the desert habitat.

   a sand b rain c sun d air

4. **A:** How .... is the daisy? **B:** Around 20 g.

   a big b long c heavy d tall

5. The roots of the plant grow under the ....

   a sky b sun c soil d air

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

black - water - red - seeds - balcony

I like to grow plants. I grow tomatoes on our ❶ .... Tomatoes are green before they are ❷ .... They have ❸ .... inside. I ❹ .... the plants every day.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The sunflower is the .... (bigger) flower.

2. The rose is the .... (more) beautiful.

3. The daisy is the .... (heavy).

4. Let's .... (having) it for lunch.

5. This story is the .... (less) exciting.

6. The eggplant is .... (than) most delicious.

7. My friend Hany is the .... (thinner) boy in the class.

8. Mona and Nadia are .... (there) cleverest girls.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. why are tomatoes green

- -

2. we water the plants every day

- -





Vocabulary

شبشب	مزرعة ....
بجعة	أرض ....
مفتاح الكهرباء	جاف ....
ضوء الشمس	ضوضاء ....
صندل	مياه الأمطار ....
ورق	لتر ....
البردى	دلتا النيل ....
مليون	مليار ....
مائة مليون	شريحة ....
حلوى	يكنس ....
هواء ملوث	فى المزرعة ....
يعمل بجد	اجداد ....
فخور بـ	سلة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينبت	....	يقرر	....
يموت	....	يتنفس	....
يرمى	....	يعطى	....
يضع	....	يأخذ	....
يبدأ	....	يواجه	....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers use .... to water the plants.
   a rainwater b farm c land d flowers
2. I drink four .... of water a day.
   a meters b kilograms c liters d grams
3. I don't like the .... air and the noise.
   a polluted b fresh c clean d good
4. There were no trees or flowers because the land was ....
   a cry b dry c rich d nice
5. I'm .... of my parents. They're great.
   a afraid b scared c proud d sad
6. I always help my mom and I .... the floor.
   a sleep b sweet c feel d sweep
7. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make paper.
   a bamboo b papyrus c beans d orange

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - sandals - used - Giza - Nile

Papyrus was a famous plant in Ancient Egypt. The Egyptians ❶ .... it to make paper. They also made ❷ .... and baskets from papyrus. They grew it in the ❸ .... Delta because it needed a lot of water and ❹ .... weather.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last year, we had a science lesson about the life cycle of a tomato. Mr Hany, our science teacher, gave us tomato seeds to put them in the soil. We watered the seeds. The seeds germinated and the roots grew under the soil. After a few weeks, the plant grew leaves, flowers and tomatoes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about the life cycle of a ....

   a sunflower   b tomato   c papyrus   d acacia

2. The .... grew under the soil.

   a leaves   b tomatoes   c roots   d seeds

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did we have a science lesson?

   ----

4. What did Mr Hany give us?

   ----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

are you proud of your grandparents

Unit 4 Where do you live?

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

حمام ....

قارب للسكن ....

شقة ....

خيمة ....

منزل ....

مدرسة ....

مكتب ....

مكتب البريد ....

متحف ....

مركز للتسوق ....

حجرة المعيشة ....

حجرة النوم ....

رائع ....

بالكامل ....

قماش ....

مطبخ ....

حجرة الطعام ....

بلكونة ....

سوبر ماركت ....

حديقة عامة ....

مستشفى ....

أمام ....

بين ....

فوق/أعلى ....

خلف ....

بجوار ....

تحت ....

يستحم ....

مبنى ....

يبدو رائع ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعمل	....	يرتب	....
يتعلم	....	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	....
يرسل	....	يسترخي	....
يشتري	....	ينام	....
يجلس	....	يرى	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nabil loves living on water, so he lives in a/an ....

   a tent   b houseboat   c apartment   d house

2. **A:** .... the post office? **B:** It's next to the school.

   a How's   b When's   c Where's   d What's

3. We go to the .... when we are sick.

   a supermarket   b museum   c park   d hospital

4. There's a boy .... the door.

   a next   b behind   c of   d between

5. People in the desert live in a/an ....

   a houseboat   b tent   c apartment   d house

6. I can buy clothes at the ....

   a shopping mall   b hospital   c museum   d office

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

relax - bathroom - whole - fantastic - balcony

My family moved to a new apartment. It's lovely and 1 .... My bedroom is very big. I can 2 .... and do my homework quietly. My mother liked the living room. There's a 3 .... and she can see the 4 .... street.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Zeyad. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is between a green house and a yellow house. The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it; a school, a hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick, they can go to the hospital. People in the village buy their food from the supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there aren't a lot of cars there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is the place where we buy our food.

a hospital　　b school　　c supermarket　　d office

2. Zeyad's uncle lives in a ....

a tent　　b Nile　　c city　　d village

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do the cousins love their village?

---

4. Where can people go when they get sick?





Vocabulary

سوق شرقى (بازار) ....

البحر الأحمر ....

استدر يمينًا ....

استدر يسارًا ....

سر بشكل مستقيم ....

الصحراء الكبرى ....

اللغة الإنجليزية ....

فجأة ....

سائح ....

رحلات سفارى ....

بنك ....

محطة ....

قوارب سياحية ....

شاطئ الغردقة ....

متجر ....

إنها في ركن الشارع ....

على اليمين ....

على اليسار ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبتسم	....	يقابل	....
ينادى	....	يسقط	....
يصيح	....	يعرف	....
يسبح	....	ينقذ	....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... right. It's behind the school.

   a Give b Make c Turn d Sleep

2. My father travels up and .... the Nile.

   a next b down c for d at

3. We send .... at the post office.

   a dinner b showers c stores d letters

4. The .... is a place where we can buy beautiful things.

   a bazaar b bank c museum d station

5. There are tall trees in .... of my house.

a behind b front c next d between

6. Hisham can .... English and Chinese.

a speak b fall c shout d save

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

boat - people - desert - parents - Nile

I live on a boat in the summer. My ❶ .... work in a tourist ❷ ....
We travel up and down the ❸ .... I like the summer very much. I see many interesting places and meet ❹ .... from all over the world.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Kareem and his family went to Hurghada last summer. Hurghada is a big city and about 190,000 people live there. Kareem visited the Sahara Desert and saw a lot of tourists. Then, he went to the bazaars and bought presents for his friends. Kareem and his family had a good time there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hurghada is a big ....

a village b town c city d desert

2. Kareem went to Hurghada last ....

a week b summer c month d year

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in two sentences.

- -

4. Where did Kareem buy presents for his friends?

- -

November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Gamal lives in a small ....

a country b city c town d village

2. There's a school .... the post office.

a on b behind c between d next to

3. There isn't a .... in the village.

a museum b school c bank d post office

4. The village is ....

a dirty b noisy c quiet d dry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They live in a city .... Hurghada.

a moved b called c worked d lived

2. We take showers in the ....

a kitchen b bedroom c living room d bathroom

3. The supermarket is .... the corner.

a for b on c next d by

4. It's hot today. We need to turn on the ....

a van b fun c fan d fox

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

speaks - travels - swim - places - tourist

My cousin Hany is helpful and kind. He works on a ❶ .... boat on the Nile. He sees many interesting ❷ .... and meets people from all over the world. He ❸ .... English and Chinese with tourists. He can ❹ .... well, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My aunt Amira is twenty five years old. After the school, she worked at the supermarket near her house. I see her every week when we buy food. Amira checks the food is fresh. She is very kind and helpful. She helps people when they can't find something. She works for eight hours.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The supermarket is .... Amira's house.

   a behind   b near   c next to   d in front of

2. I see Amira every .... in the supermarket.

   a month   b year   c week   d day

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text into one sentence.

- -

4. How many hours does Amira work?

- -

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**Goes**) straight ahead.
2. Salem can .... (**speaking**) Chinese.
3. Hisham is the .... (**tall**) boy in the class.
4. The trees are in .... (**behind**) of the apartment.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

siwa is in the west of Egypt -

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Hurghada

Guiding questions

1- Where is it?
2- How many people live there?

- -
- -
- -

November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. My uncle grows .... on his farm.

a potatoes b tomatoes c onions d bananas

2. My uncle can take the .... to grow new tomatoes.

a seeds b flowers c leaves d trees

3. My uncle plants the seeds in the ....

a river b soil c desert d lake

4. My uncle waters the plants every ....

a month b year c week d day

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. **A:** How .... does the rose live? **B:** Around ten days.

a tall b heavy c long d big

2. I live with my family in a big ....

a hospital b apartment c school d bank

3. We saw the .... of lightning in the sky.

a star b sound c rain d flash

4. The supermarket is .... the shopping mall.

a between b behind c next d front

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clothes - between - important - mall - sick

There are a lot of places in my village. These places are ❶ .... There's a shopping ❷ .... where I can buy ❸ .... There's a school ❹ .... the post office and the supermarket. I love my village.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Emad lives on a farm with his parents. They plant millions of seeds. They use the Nile to water the seeds. They grow many fruits like mangoes and oranges. They **plant** trees and flowers, too. Emad's family are very happy. Emad is very proud of his parents.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Emad's parents plant .... of seeds.

   a billions b millions c thousands d hundreds

2. The underlined word "**plant**" means ....

   a die b find c grow d water

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who is Emad very proud of?

   ---

4. What do Emad's parents grow on their farm?

   ---

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I think the rose is the .... (**more**) beautiful.
2. The sunflower lives the .... (**longer**).
3. .... (**Turns**) left, the shop is on the corner.
4. Our kitchen is the .... (**hot**) room in the house.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

there's a balcony in my apartment ---

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Papyrus

Guiding questions

1- Why is papyrus a special plant?
2- Where did Ancient Egyptians grow papyrus?

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Lessons 



Vocabulary

كهرباء	أدوات ....
كهربائى	ضوء ....
مقبس (بريزة)	سباك ....
عاصفة	عامل نظافة ....
برق	ساعى بريد ....
صدمة كهربائية	ميكانيكى ....
طرد	سائق اتوبيس ....
أيدي مبتلة	قمامة ....
سرعة	آمن ....
جاف	ماسورة ....
يوفر الكهرباء	يجمع ....
قريب من	حنفية ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يوصل	....	ينسى	....
ينقط	....	يضع شئ فى مكانه	....
يجمع	....	يقود	....
يأمل	....	يخرج/يزيل	....
يحصل على	....	يلمس	....
يصبغ	....	يحرق/يحترق	....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An .... delivers letters and parcels.
   a) bus driver b) mechanic c) mail carrier d) electrician
2. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a) wet b) dry c) big d) small
3. A/An .... fixes cars and buses.
   a) plumber b) cleaner c) mechanic d) doctor
4. A good mechanic is always ready to .... buses and cars.
   a) sleep b) learn c) cook d) fix
5. These are the plumber's ....
   a) speed b) storm c) tools d) light
6. A/An .... fixed pipes and faucets. القاهرة (2023)
   a) mechanic b) driver c) plumber d) electrician

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wash - plumber - electrician - mail carrrier - watch

There are lots of workers in our community to help our people. An ❶ .... connects the electricity so you can use lights, ❷ .... TV, or do your homework on a computer. A ❸ .... delivers your letters and packages. A ❹ .... fixes pipes and faucets.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. That .... (**are**) the socket.
2. Don't .... (**making**) noise.
3. These .... (**is**) the plumber's tools.
4. .... (**This**) mechanics are fixing the engines.
5. This .... (**are**) my sister's book. بني سويف (2024)
6. These .... (**girl**) play in the garden. القاهرة (2024)
7. .... (**That**) mountains are very high. كفر الشيخ (2024)

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- what's your favorite job

2- electricity is very important





Vocabulary

مهندس معمارى	عيوب ....
راديو	مفك ....
شريط لاصق	لعبة المكعبات ....
عامل نظافة	كهربائى ....
سئ	تليفون محمول ....
فضولى	جيد ....
صبور	ثقيل ....
بالغ	حقيبة البريد ....
مزايا	بالخارج ....
من جهة	من الجهة الأخرى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.... يتصل	....	.... يغضب	....
.... يتعلم	....	.... يضع	....
.... يغير	....	.... يشرح	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... uses a screwdriver to open things.
   a) architect   b) electrician   c) teacher   d) farmer

2. The plumber .... pipes and faucets.
   a) takes   b) fixes   c) carries   d) teaches

3. A mail carrier works ....
   a) at home   b) at school   c) inside   d) outside

4. How .... can electricity travel?
   a) tall   b) high   c) fast   d) many

5. It's very .... to touch electrical things with wet hands.
   a) good   b) safe   c) happy   d) dangerous

6. I didn't .... angry with my little sister.
   a) get   b) make   c) take   d) have

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tape - things - blocks - house - heavy

My cousin Noha wants to be an architect. When she was a baby, she played with ❶ .... She put one block on top of another. Then, she started making ❷ .... She made a little ❸ .... for her cat. She always carried a ❹ .... measure and a pencil.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name's Yasser. I'm in primary four. When I grow up, I want to be a mail carrier. There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. It isn't an **easy** job. The mail carrier walks all day and his bag is very heavy. But, I like this job because I want to work outside all day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The mail carrier's bag is very ....

   a heavy b easy c nice d small

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**easy**" is ....

   a scary b happy c difficult d huge

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Yasser want to be a mail carrier?

   ----

4. Where does the mail carrier work all day?

   ----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- what do you like to do

2- come and get our lovely fish

Unit 6 What do you do?

Lessons 



Vocabulary

مرشد سياحى	صيد السمك ....
المواصلات	صياد السمك ....
الزراعة	شبكة ....
يقطف	يصطاد سمك ....
أمينة المكتبة	سياحة ....
طاقة غير متجددة	فندق ....
طاقة متجددة	نقود ....
طاقة الأمواج	بترول ....
طاقة شمسية	فحم ....
طاقة الرياح	غاز ....
مطعم	سوق ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.... يحرق/يحترق	....	.... يعطي	....
.... يقطع/يزيل	....	.... يصطاد	....
.... يشرح/يفسر	....	.... يبيع	....
.... يستيقظ	....	.... يدور - يلف	....
.... يعتني بـ	....	.... ينفذ (ينتهي)	....



Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. These .... will grow into a big tree.

   a seeds   b fruits   c nutrients   d boats

2. Coal and oil are .... energy.

   a renewable   b non-renewable   c wind   d solar

3. People .... down trees to sell wood.

   a explain   b watch   c cut   d take

4. A .... explains the history to tourists.

   a librarian   b guide   c teacher   d fisherman

5. I send the fruit to the .... to make fresh juice.

   a factory   b sea   c library   d park

6. My job is to look .... all the books.

a on b after c out d for

7. I work in the tourism industry. I'm a ....

a guide b librarian c fisherman d farmer

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - outside - sails - patient - catches

My uncle is a fisherman. He gets up every day and 1 .... his boat on the Nile. He 2 .... fish and sells his fish in the 3 .... He is 4 .... and doesn't get angry when he puts his net in the river and doesn't find fish.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Tarek. I'm Egyptian. My father is a guide. He works in the tourism industry. He meets tourists from all over the countries. He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places **they** visit. He speaks English, French and Chinese. He gets up early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. He is clever and helpful, so all tourists come to Egypt to meet him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek's father works in the .... industry.

a education b farming c tourism d fishing

2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....

a countries b tourists c information d places

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Tarek's father tell the tourists?

----

4. Why do tourists come to meet Tarek's father?



Lessons 3 - 4 & 5



Vocabulary

جاهز	قرية ....
مهذب	محبط ....
يظهر الاحترام	محرك ....
مختلف	صبور ....
اسئلة مفاجأة	طالب ....
مشكلة	صوت (شئ) ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يشجع	....	يفكر	....
يسأل	....	ينزل من	....
يجيب	....	يعلم	....
يحترم	....	لا يوافق	....
لا يحب	....	يحبط	....
لا يطيع	....	يختفي	....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mechanic can .... the engine.

   a fix b break c come d explain

2. We like our .... We meet them every day at school.

   a vets b mechanics c teachers d fishermen

3. I respect the cleaner, so I don't throw ....

   a history b trash c information d problem

4. A good teacher is always ready to ....

   a catch b throw c learn d sleep

5. The librarian looks .... all the books.

   a after b down c on d of

6. The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the ....

   a pipe b faucet c engine d socket

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You can .... (having) fun in the sun.
2. I can't find my cat. It .... (appeared).
3. Teachers .... (need) encourage their students.
4. Everyone in the class .... (know) different things.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's **hard** work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a houses b families c teachers d environment

2. The underlined word "**hard**" means ....

a easy b difficult c fast d slow

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do students always ask?

- -

4. What can a teacher change?

- -

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

teachers work for many hours

- -

December Test 1 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. We should .... all jobs around us.

   a make b respect c help d connect

2. All jobs are .... in our life.

   a dangerous b important c noisy d ugly

3. The .... fixes our pipes.

   a cleaner b electrician c teacher d plumber

4. The electrician connects our .... to electricity.

   a homes b streets c life d pipes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mail carrier gets lots of .... and is healthy.

   a blocks b exercise c sleep d tools

2. My teacher is always kind and ....

   a nervous b patient c angry d disappointed

3. Always .... sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.

   a put b work c make d have

4. A garbage collector collects the ....

   a trash b parcels c sockets d plugs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

burn - learn - renewable - run - produce

Wind energy is important for us. It's a ❶ .... resource. The wind energy ❷ .... electricity. It can grow again and never ❸ .... out. We don't need to ❹ .... this resource.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle has a big house in a village. There's a garden around his house. He grows all kinds of fruit. One day, he wanted to cut down the trees to sell wood, but, his father was angry. My uncle felt sorry because when he cut down the trees, he had no fruits and no more wood. Then, he went to the market and bought a lot of seeds to grow into big trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The uncle wanted to cut the trees to get ....

a water   b wood   c fruits   d leaves

2. The uncle bought the seeds to grow into big ....

a flowers   b plants   c trees   d fruits

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the uncle feel sorry? ------------------------------

4. What did the uncle buy at the market? ------------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where .... (does) you work?

2. .... (That) are the mechanic's tools.

3. Wind and water .... (is) renewable resources.

4. Never .... (touched) anything electrical with wet hands.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

who teaches you to respect people ------------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The jobs around us

Guiding questions

1- What are different jobs around us?
2- What's your favorite job?

December Test 2 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Mr Hossam works on the ....

a farm b beach c sea d balcony

2. Mr Hossam goes out on his ....

a van b boat c bus d car

3. Mr Hossam comes back in the ....

a morning b evening c afternoon d summer

4. Mr Hossam .... fish in his shop.

a sells b catches c buys d eats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The farmer .... the fruit to the factory.

a sends b raises c fixes d lives

2. The plumber connects the pipes and ....

a parcels b trash c faucets d sockets

3. Electricity can be .... It can burn us.

a safe b dangerous c easy d beautiful

4. Malak .... out of the window to see the trees.

a looked b bought c caught d grew

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - throw - people - get - explain

I want to be a teacher. I like helping 1 .... I never 2 .... angry with my little brothers or sisters. I 3 .... things all the time. I'm always 4 .... to learn.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My cousin Marwa is a librarian. She works in a school library. She looks after all the books. She buys lots of new books and helps children find the books they need. Children respect her, they put the books back on the shelf. She goes to her work at eight o'clock and comes home at two o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Marwa works for .... hours.

   a six b five c seven d four

2. Children put the books back on the ....

   a door b shelf c desk d table

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Marwa work?

   ----

4. What does Marwa buy?

   ----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (These) is the water dripping from the faucet.
2. .... (Comes) and get your lovely fish.
3. .... (That) kites are flying in the sky.
4. Don't .... (putting) anything into a socket.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

the guide works outside --

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Electricity

Guiding words

dangerous - burn

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسى الأول

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الشروق التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. A plumber .... faucets.
   a cleans b takes away c fixes d drives
2. An electrician connects homes to ....
   a water b garbage c houses d electricity
3. .... takes away all the garbage.
   a A plumber b A garbage collector
   c A bus driver d An electrician
4. A bus driver takes .... to school.
   a children b horses c dogs d food

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We .... rice and lemons in our country.
   a raise b grow c drink d play
2. The desert is .... at night.
   a hot b strong c cold d sunny
3. Horses like to drink .... water.
   a hot b dirty c salt d fresh
4. I live on a .... because I love living on water.
   a tent b cave c house d houseboat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sand - without - special - water - feet

Camels are perfect for the desert. They have large flat ❶ .... so, they can walk on the sand. They can also live ❷ .... water for a long time. Camels have ❸ .... ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the ❹ .... from coming in.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Shahd lives in a city called Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It is a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there are lots of interesting things to do.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hurghada is in the ---------- of Egypt on the Red Sea.

   a north b south c east d west

2. Hurghada is a ---------- .

   a city b country c village d sea

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ----------------------------
4. How many people live in Hurghada? ----------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A cat is small, ---------- (and) the horse is big.
2. Elephants are ---------- (big) than dogs.
3. The post office is next ---------- (two) the library.
4. When my brother ---------- (is) a child, he played with toys.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what did you do yesterday ----------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your apartment

Guiding words:

living room - bedroom

----

2 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Mohamed lives in a ....

a city b village c zoo d park

2. Mohamed's house is next to the ....

a shop b bank c hospital d school

3. Mohamed's father is a ....

a farmer b doctor c teacher d nurse

4. Mohamed's father raises ....

a sheep b goats c cows d chickens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is where an emperor lives.

a park b palace c garden d street

2. The fennec fox has thick ....

a beak b wing c fur d coat

3. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.

a black b blue c green d yellow

4. I sleep in the ....

a bathroom b bedroom c living room d kitchen

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kitchen - apartment - bedroom - balcony - bathroom

My name is Heba. I live in an (1) .... My favorite room is the (2) ...., where I can relax and do my homework .My mom loves to sit in the (3) .... where she can see the people in the street.We cook food at the (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up early in the morning every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish, then in the afternoon he comes back and sells his fish in the market. His fish goes to restaurants and homes all over the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle is a ....

a teacher b fisherman c doctor d vet

2. My uncle goes out on his ....

a car b boat c bus d train

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does your uncle catch?

....

4. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The lion is the .... (**strong**) animal.
2. The school is .... (**on**) to the park.
3. I like fish .... (**and**) I don't like meat.
4. We love living on water, so we live.......................... (**in**) a houseboat.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i don't eat candy

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Horses

Guiding questions:

1- What do horses drink?
2 - What do horses eat?

....

....

....

3 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة طوخ التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Soha works at the ....

a school   b post office   c supermarket   d hospital

2. We meet her when we buy ....

a flowers   b food   c plants   d books

3. Soha is very kind and ....

a happy   b angry   c small   d thin

4. We see Soha there every ....

a morning   b week   c Monday   d Saturday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I think we .... chickens in Egypt.

a raise   b grow   c plant   d water

2. "Honest" means someone who doesn't ....

a live   b play   c lie   d win

3. My friend lives on a ...., she loves living on water.

a tent   b garden   c balcony   d houseboat

4. Reed and lotus flowers grow near .... and lakes.

a desert   b farms   c rivers   d forests

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

heat - fur - insects - foxes - desert

The fennec fox is a small animal. It lives in the ❶ .... It's smaller than other ❷ .... Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear ❸ .... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses ❹ ....from its ears.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hany. I spend my weekend at home with my family.We have three meals every day. They are breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My ---------- cooks food for the family.
   a mother   b sister   c brother   d father
2. We are having ---------- and chicken for lunch today.
   a pasta   b rice   c potatoes   d salad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many meals do they have every day? ----------------------------
4. What is Hany's favorite meal? ----------------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Camels are .... (tall) than horses.
2. Horses .... (has) large eyes.
3. That .... (am) the post office.
4. I don't eat rice. I .... (like) rice.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you like your job --

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

My house

Guiding words:

living room - balcony

----

4 محافظة المنوفية

إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Judy thinks she is ....
   - a healthy
   - b unhealthy
   - c brave
   - d lazy
2. Judy doesn't eat ....
   - a candy
   - b rice
   - c potatoes
   - d watermelons
3. Judy likes ....
   - a walking
   - b running
   - c sleeping
   - d eating
4. Judy does a lot of ....
   - a homework
   - b sport
   - c cake
   - d jobs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Crocodiles are very ....
   - a cute
   - b dangerous
   - c nice
   - d kind
2. Damietta is .... for Domiati cheese.
   - a cold
   - b hot
   - c famous
   - d happy
3. The sunflower opens and .... the sun.
   - a closes
   - b faces
   - c puts
   - d drops
4. My favorite room is the ....
   - a van
   - b living room
   - c face
   - d boat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

village - live - trees - family - friends

My name is Zain. I (1) .... in a village next to the Nile . I live in a house with my (2) .... Our house is not the biggest in the (3) .... It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall (4) .... behind the house.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Plants are very important for us. In Egypt, farmers grow different plants.We are growing tomato plants on the balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes.We plant a seed and the plant grows .That is called germination. We water the plant every day , and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits .Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. This text is about ___________.

a jobs　　b animals　　c tomatoes　　d books

2. We can take the __________ and grow new tomatoes.

a roots　　b fruits　　c seeds　　d leaves

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What do tomatoes have inside? ______________________________

4. What color are tomatoes before they are red ? ______________________

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Fatima loves ice cream __________________ (**but**) chocolate.
2. My city is the __________________ (**nicer**) place to live.
3. He __________________ (**traveling**) to Paris last weekend.
4. I like sitting next __________________ (**too**) the couch.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

which number is not a prime number ______________________________

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Sunflowers

Guiding words:

faces - seeds

____

____

____

____

5 محافظة الشرقية

إدارة كفر صقر التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Mariam lives in a big __________.

a city b town c country d village

2. Mariam's house is near the __________.

a Nile b canal c sea d lake

3. Mariam can see the __________ all day.

a river b desert c street d shop

4. Mariam's father is a __________.

a teacher b doctor c farmer d mechanic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egyptian farmers __________ chickens.

a give b bring c fly d raise

2. My dad is a __________. He likes looking at animals and plants.

a plumber b scientist c doctor d driver

3. Tourists usually go on __________ when they are in the Sahara Desert.

a visits b picnics c boats d safaris

4. The ancient Egyptians made paper from __________.

a papyrus b iron c metal d skin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cheese - fishermen - Life - farmers - catch

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The ❶ __________ can grow rice, wheat and guavas. Fishermen ❷ __________ thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati ❸ __________ is very delicious. About one and half million people live in this part of Egypt. ❹ __________ is good in Damietta.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's **hard** work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ………… .

   a houses b families c teachers d habitats

2. The underlined word "**hard**" means ………… .

   a easy b difficult c fast d slow

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do students always ask? ……………………………………

4. What can a teacher change? ……………………………………

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ………… (**These**) apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
2. I don't like candy, ………… (**because**) I like fruit.
3. A school is the place where we ………… (**learns**).
4. The cat is ………… (**heavy**) than the mouse.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you like mangoes ……………………………………

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"Your home"

Guiding questions

1- Where do you live?
2- What's your favorite room?

……………………………………

……………………………………

……………………………………



محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Reham lives in ....
   a Cairo b Aswan c Hurghada d Alexandria
2. There are some beautiful houses and ....
   a bazaars b museums c theaters d houses
3. There is ....
   a the pyramid b the Sahara Desert
   c the West Desert d the East Desert
4. .... go on safaris there.
   a Farmers b Teachers c Students d Tourists

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egyptian farmers .... chickens.
   a give b play c raise d build
2. A .... is a place where living things live and grow.
   a habitat b fur c cinema d library
3. Papyrus is a very .... plant.
   a special b poor c bad d ugly
4. The book is .... the door, I can't see it.
   a next b in front c behind d in

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

green - billion - rainwater - life - fruits

My grandparents had a farm .They grew many ❶ .... They used ❷ .... to water the plants.They needed about a ❸ .... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a very good boy. He always gets up early. He works on tourist boats in summer with his father so his father likes him .He is very helpful .One day,the tourist boat stopped and Omar saw some children playing on the boat.

Suddenly, a small child fell into the river.The child shouted, "Please, help me!" Omar called his dad. Omar's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and finally he saved the child.The child smiled when he was safe and said,"Thank you so much !".It was a day to remember. Omar was happy because his dad could save the child.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar's dad can .... so he saved the child.

a read b swim c jump d run

2. The children were ....

a swimming b sleeping c playing d eating

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. What happened to the small child? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (**This**) .... plumbers fix the pipes.
2. Did you ....(**making**) a house for your sister's doll?
3. Crocodiles are the .... (**more**) dangerous animals.
4. That cat is cute .... (**but**) quiet.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what do you like to do ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A job you want to do

Guiding questions:

1- What's your favorite job?
2 - What do you do in your job?

....

....

....



7 محافظة البحيرة

إدارة أبوحمص التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The fennec fox lives in the __________.
   a deserts b mountains c lakes d seas
2. The fennec fox loses __________ from its ears.
   a seed b heat c meat d feet
3. Its ears are very __________.
   a small b big c fat d short
4. It needs big ears to __________ insects.
   a listen b see c speak d hear

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He ate one __________ of pizza.
   a swan b slice c slipper d switch
2. Spiders are very __________ animals. They eat insects.
   a helpful b dangerous c noisy d big
3. We don't like the __________ air in the city.
   a helpful b noisy c polluted d special
4. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of __________.
   a camera b rain c sand d lightning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

walk - learn - place - like - supermarkets

I'm Jana. I'm eleven years old. I live in a small town. I love my town. It's small, but it has ❶ ________, offices, schools and many other places. It's a good ❷ ________ to live in. I ❸ __________ to school every morning. I go to school with my friends. I ❹ __________ my friends very much.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Dunia is eleven years old. She goes to a primary school. Her school is near her house. She has two sisters. Her father is a teacher and her mother is a doctor. Dunia walks to her school with her friends.She is good at English. She likes reading stories very much. She goes to the school library to read stories.She is a good pupil. She always gets full marks at school. She likes her family very much.They are a happy family.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dunia's father is a __________.

   a teacher   b doctor   c farmer   d plumber

2. Dunia has no __________.

   a sisters   b brothers   c father   d mother

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text about? ______________________________

4. Why does Dunia go to the school library? ______________________________

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A mouse is __________ (**small**) than an elephant.
2. Zyad __________ (**water**) the plants in his balcony yesterday.
3. Mohammed __________ (**live**) in the village.
4. Look at __________ (**this**) bird in the sky. It's very cute.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what healthy things do you do ______________________________

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"How to be healthy"

Guiding words:

exercise - cola

____

____

8 محافظة كفر الشيخ

إدارة قلين التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Judy thinks that she is __________.
   a healthy b tired c unhealthy d unwell
2. Judy __________ to her grandma's house.
   a drives b walks c flies d rides
3. Judy really likes __________.
   a fishing b talking c walking d swimming
4. __________ are her favorite fruit.
   a Bananas b Apples c Mangoes d Oranges

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel works with tourists. He is a __________.
   a plumber b guide c doctor d farmer
2. The tent is made of __________.
   a wood b grass c cloth d glass
3. I can see the whole street from my __________.
   a shower b balcony c book d pot
4. The roots grow __________ the soil.
   a next to b on c under d above

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

excited - help - dangerous - electrician - lights

My name is Aser. I want to be an electrician when I grow up. My father is an ❶__________, too. He connects electricity, so people can use ❷ __________, watch TV, or do homework on their computers. I want to fix things and ❸ __________ people. I think electricity is ❹ __________.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Heba and Omar are cousins. But they are both very different. When Heba was young, she was a curious child. She loved to experiment. She used a screwdriver to open old cell phones and radios. When Omar was young, he was very patient and he liked helping other people. He was never angry with his younger brother. He explained things to him all the time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heba and Omar are ....
   a friends b students c cousins d classmates
2. Heba loved to ....
   a play b sell c travel d experiment

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Heba use the screwdriver for? ....
4. What did Omar like doing? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I like playing tennis .... (**because**) volleyball.
2. .... (**This**) are my sister's books.
3. The tent is .... (**on**) front of the car.
4. **A:** .... (**When**) is your house? **B:** It's on the corner.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

life is good in a village ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Camels

Guiding questions:

1 - Where do camels live? Why?
2 - How do camels walk on the sand?

....

....

....

9 محافظة الإسماعيلية

إدارة الإسماعيلية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Omar lives in ....
   - a Luxor
   - b Hurghada
   - c Aswan
   - d Alexandria
2. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   - a north
   - b south
   - c east
   - d west
3. Hurghada is on the ....
   - a River Nile
   - b Lake Nasser
   - c Red Sea
   - d moon
4. About .... people live in Hurghada.
   - a 190,000
   - b 1900
   - c 119,000
   - d 1,900,000

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The gardeners are good .... looking after gardens.
   - a on
   - b at
   - c for
   - d next
2. My father doesn't like the .... of the city.
   - a happiness
   - b quietness
   - c noise
   - d beauty
3. The cleaners keep the school ....
   - a dirty
   - b clean
   - c ugly
   - d bad
4. The sunflower dies and drops its ....
   - a roots
   - b soil
   - c water
   - d seeds

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

insects - helpful - spider - small - huge

There are a lot of animals that live in our country. The crocodile is ❶ .... and scary. The ❷ .... is scarier, but it is very ❸ .... .Farmers like spiders because they eat ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about growing ....
   a flowers b tomato plants c mango trees d peas trees
2. There are .... inside tomatoes.
   a roots b flowers c plants d seeds

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What color are tomatoes before they are red? ....
4. Which part of the tomato plant grows under the soil? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Fatima is very clever .... (**but**) she studies her lessons very well.
2. Mr Ayman .... (**catch**) fish yesterday.
3. How long does the lion .... (**lives**)?
4. Are .... (**that**) your friends?

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do we grow in Egypt ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"A mail carrier"

Guiding questions

1 - What does a mail carrier do?
2 - Where does a mail carrier work?

....

....

....

10 محافظة الأسكندرية

إدارة شرق التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Egyptian .... are important for us.
   a rooms   b books   c farmers   d palaces
2. They .... many things.
   a play   b go   c cook   d produce
3. They grow .... lemons, grapes and sugarcane.
   a chicken   b cake   c onions   d milk
4. They raise many ....
   a food   b animals   c vegetables   d fruit

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We .... the sound of the engine.
   a grew   b heard   c drove   d sold
2. The .... is a person who is like a king.
   a emperor   b farmer   c guide   d teacher
3. I never eat fish. I .... it.
   a love   b have   c dislike   d want
4. The man swam and .... the child.
   a saved   b bought   c decided   d worked

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

delicious - kitchen - food - bananas - seed

Yesterday, Hana and her mom made lunch .They made it in the ❶ .... They cooked some special ❷ .... They cooked rice ,potatoes and chicken. They had ❸ .... and mangoes after lunch. The food was very ❹ .... Hana was very happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Alexandría is a big town in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt on the sea. About five million people live in this part of Egypt. People visit Alexandria in summer to enjoy its beaches .When they go to Alexandria,they swim in the sea and they can enjoy their time visiting many places. Alexandria is famous for its amazing beaches and the Alexandria Library.Tourists like to visit Alexandria governorate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about "__________".

   a Damietta   b Cairo   c Alexandria   d Aswan

2. People visit Alexandria in __________ to swim in the sea.

   a summer   b winter   c fall   d spring

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Alexandria? ____

4. Summarize the text in one sentence. ______________________________

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. __________ (**This**) are Rasha's books.
2. My cat is the __________ (**big**) on our street.
3. The hospital is __________ (**next**) the school.
4. The rose is __________ (**tall**) than the daisy

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i listen carefully to my teacher ________________________________

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

" Your favorite animal"

Guiding questions

1- Where does it live?

2- What does it eat?

____

____

11 محافظة مرسى مطروح

إدارة الحمام التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Papyrus is a very special ....
   a animal b plant c food d vegetable
2. Ancient .... used papyrus to make many things.
   a French b Italians c Egyptians d British
3. They used papyrus to make ....
   a juice b paper c dessert d tea
4. Papyrus grows near the .... Delta.
   a Nile b Lake c Sea d River

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like to eat .... food and exercise to keep fit.
   a healthy b bad c unhealthy d ugly
2. A .... is where we can send letters.
   a hospital b post office c mail d supermarket
3. We use .... to make sugar.
   a onions b watermelons c sugarcane d grapes
4. Some birds have long ...., they use them to eat.
   a pens b beaks c peas d horns

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

need - fresh - smaller - desert - eyes

Horses look very beautiful. Horses live from 25 - 30 years. Horses have large beautiful ❶ .... They eat grass and drink ❷ .... water. Horses are ❸ .... than camels. They can live in the desert, but they ❹ .... people to look after them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Nader. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do.There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hurghada is a big Egyptian.......... .

a country   b village   c town   d city

2. It's in the .... of Egypt on the Red Sea.

a east   b west   c north   d south

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where's Sahl Hasheesh? ....

4. What things can you do in Hurghada? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. **(These)** .... is the school where I learn.
2. **(Are)** .... the cat under the table?
3. Crocodiles are **(most)** .... dangerous than monkeys.
4. I play football **(but)** .... I eat vegetables.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

zain's house is next to the Nile ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن :

Fennec fox

Guiding questions:

1- Where does it live? 2- What does it eat?

....

....

....

....

12 محافظة الفيوم

إدارة شرق الفيوم التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Mom is in the __________ .

a living room   b bedroom   c kitchen   d balcony

2. We're having potatoes and __________ for lunch.

a tomatoes   b chicken   c meat   d burgers

3. All the food we have comes from __________ .

a China   b Japan   c France   d Egypt

4. Egyptian __________ raise chickens.

a farmers   b teachers   c nurses   d engineers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The farmers grow __________.

a rice   b milk   c meat   d juice

2. Camels have flat __________.

a arms   b feet   c hands   d beaks

3. Tomatoes have __________ inside.

a róots   b shoot   c seeds   d leaves

4. We buy food from the __________.

a office   b school   c bank   d market

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

electrician - computer - mail - faucets - walls

All the jobs are important. There are many workers in our community to help us. A ❶ __________ carrier delivers your letters and parcels. A plumber connects ❷ __________ to get water. An ❸ __________ connects the electricity and helps you watch TV and do your homework on ❹ __________ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat and lemons.

There are cows and goats in Damietta governorate. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta!.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

a Fayoum b Cairo c Luxor d Damietta

2. .... catch thousands of fish.

a Teachers b Engineers c Fishermen d Farmers

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta? ....

4. Do you think life is good in Damietta? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The blue car is .... (**old**) than the red car.
2. The car is .... (**front**) to the tent.
3. This .... (**are**) my bag.
4. I like fish, ... (**and**) I don't like eggs.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

which is your favorite room ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Desert habitat

Guiding words

acacia - camels

....

....

....

13 محافظة بني سويف

إدارة ناصر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Zain lives in a .... next to the Nile.
   a city b village c town d park
2. Zain lives in a house with his.......... .
   a friends b teachers c uncle d family
3. Zain's house is between a .... house and a brown house.
   a yellow b red c green d blue
4. There are tall trees .... the house.
   a behind b under c in front of d in

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... fixed pipes and faucets.
   a plumber b mechanic c driver d bus driver
2. Farmers in my country .... chickens and cows.
   a plant b grow c raise d drink
3. In the desert, people live in ....
   a tents b nests c apartments d houseboats
4. Fishermen .... thousands of fish in the sea.
   a grow b paint c catch d write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

collector - mechanic - driver - pipes - city

We can all help each other in our community. Many people around us have special skills to help us. For example, a bus ❶ .... helps the builder go to his work. When the bus breaks down, the bus driver needs a ❷ .... to fix it. A garbage ❸ .... takes the trash. We can make our ❹ .... a better place to live in.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed. I'm in grade four. At school, our teacher told us how to grow tomatoes. First, you plant the tomatoes seeds in the soil and water them every day. The plant needs water and sunlight to grow. After that, the seeds grow roots under the soil. Then, the shoot grows above the soil. Finally, the plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomatoes. My tomatoes are very delicious.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is in grade ....
   a one b two c three d four
2. The seeds grow .... under the soil.
   a flowers b grapes c roots d shoot

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.

....

4. What does the plant need to grow?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The giraffe is .... (**tall**) than the horse.
2. I eat fish .... (**but**) rice.
3. This .... (**are**) the school bus.
4. My house is next.............................. (**of**) my school.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

hany is my best brother

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The electrician

Guiding words:

dangerous - electricity

....

....

....

14 محافظة المنيا

إدارة بني مزار التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. My grandfather is a / an ....
   a farmer　b plumber　c electrician　d teacher
2. He has a small ....
   a park　b farm　c office　d zoo
3. He raises .... and sheep.
   a cows　b chickens　c pelicans　d goats
4. We are .... to eat fresh food.
   a happy　b sad　c angry　d patient

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor is someone who is like a ....
   a king　b farmer　c guide　d vet
2. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.
   a meat　b grass　c sand　d fish
3. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a above　b under　c on　d next
4. The .... is a place where we buy food.
   a office　b hospital　c supermarket　d school

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

germination - tomatoes - flowers - red - grow

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can use these seeds to ❶ .... new plants. This is called ❷ .... We put the seeds in the soil and water them every day. Plants grow taller and bigger. The plants finally grow ❸ .... and the flowers become ❹ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Alaa. I live in Hurghada. I live in a **beautiful** apartment. It has four rooms. For me,my bedroom is my favorite room. I can relax and do my homework quietly. It also has a big balcony. I love sitting on my balcony because I can see the sea. I really love my home.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word **"beautiful"** means ....

a ugly b lovely c huge d small

2. There are .... rooms in Alaa's apartment.

a three b four c five d six

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Alaa live?

....

4. Why does she love sitting on her balcony?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The rose is ....(**tall**) than the daisy.
2. The tent is ....(**between**) to the car.
3. Those ....(**is**) the mail carrier's parcels.
4. A lion is the ....(**more**) dangerous animal.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

adam likes healthy food ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The teacher

Guiding words:

patient - hard

....

....

15 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة منفلوط التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. We put a .... in the soil.
   a) root b) leave c) seed d) branch
2. The seed .... water to grow.
   a) helps b) needs c) puts d) goes
3. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a) under b) above c) next to d) between
4. The plants give us ....
   a) books b) fruits c) fish d) milk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We should .... a lot of sports.
   a) do b) make c) eat d) drink
2. The pelican has a long ....
   a) paw b) beak c) hair d) head
3. The sunflower is the .... flower.
   a) noisest b) scariest c) heaviest d) longest
4. A/An .... drives to many different places.
   a) mechanic b) driver c) plumber d) electrician

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

on - catches - market - plays - wakes

My uncle is a fisherman. He (1) .... up early every day. He goes out (2) .... his boat and (3) .... fish. He goes home with a lot of fish and sells some fish at the (4) .... My uncle likes his job.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Different people live in different places. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony. My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water. In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth. I love living in a house because it is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a big .... in the apartment.
   a bed   b TV   c balcony   d couch

2. My friend lives on a .... on water.
   a tent   b house   c apartment   d houseboat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text? ....

4. Where do people live in the desert? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1 - I think I'm healthy. I like to .... (**played**) basketball.

2 - Who .... (**working**) on the sea?

3 - .... (**Going**) straight and turn left.

4 - The mouse is .... (**small**) than the lion.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hurghada is on the Red Sea ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

My favorite room

Guiding words:

balcony - relax

....

....

....

....

....

....

16 محافظة سوهاج

إدارة اخميم التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Damietta is an Egyptian ....

   a governorate   b village   c town   d country

2. Its land is rich in ....

   a stars   b nutrients   c books   d fish

3. The farmers can grow many crops such as rice and ....

   a fruits   b vegetables   c wheat   d tomatoes

4. Fishermen catch thousands of .... in the sea.

   a birds   b fish   c animals   d sheep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The park is next .... the museum.

   a to   b of   c off   d too

2. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.

   a blue   b green   c yellow   d brown

3. Egyptian farmers .... chickens.

   a bring   b give   c grow   d raise

4. He couldn't start his van. He was ....

   a disobeyed   b disappointed   c disagreed   d disliked

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

coats - ears - water - horns - grass

Rhim gazelles are beautiful animals. They have big ❶ .... and long ❷ .... .They eat ❸ .... They have yellow white ❹ .... They live in the Sahara Desert.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Mona is in grade four. She wants to be an architect. When Mona was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about a / an ....
   a job   b animal   c hospital   d office
2. Mona's .... always help her.
   a father   b mother   c parents   d cousins

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Mona do when she was three? ....
4. What does she want to be? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1 - .... (That) mountains are very high.
2 - The camel is stronger .... (then) the houses.
3 - The shopping mall is in front .... (in) the office.
4 - Let's .... (eating) our lunch.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he lives in Cairo ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Mechanics

Guiding words:

repair shop - fix

....

....

....

....

17 محافظة قنا

إدارة قوص التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Farmers work in the .... habitat.

   a agricultural　b lake　c desert　d river

2. Farmers look after the ....

   a children　b insects　c trees　d fish

3. Farmers grow plants like .... plants.

   a bean　b acacia　c reed　d tamarisk

4. Farmers sell some .... to the markets.

   a mangoes　b oranges　c bananas　d carrots

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders are very ...., they eat insects.

   a happy　b huge　c helpful　d bad

2. Egyptian farmers .... chickens and cows.

   a bring　b give　c grow　d raise

3. A .... helps children find the books they need.

   a librarian　b guide　c farmer　d fisherman

4. A lotus flower needs water, so it grows near the ....

   a river　b sand　c desert　d cave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

mechanic - plumber - mail carrier - electrician - bus driver

There are different jobs. A (1) .... fixes cars and buses. An (2) .... connects electricity so we can use lights. A (3) .... fixes pipes and faucets, so we can have water. A (4) .... delivers letters and parcels. All jobs are important.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Hamza. I live in a small city with my family. It has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a big library, I think it's a good place to live in. Every day, I go to school by bus because I live far from my school. My school is next to the hospital where my father works. In front of the hospital, there is a big park. I often go there on the weekends to play handball with my friends. There is also a big supermarket where we can buy different foods and drinks.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hamza's school is ---------- the hospital.
   a behind b beside c next to d in front of
2. Hamza buys foods and drinks at the ----------.
   a school b hospital c park d supermarket

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How does Hamza go to school? --
4. Where is the park? --

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The fennec fox is ---------- (**small**) than the camel.
2. Faten loves ice cream ---------- (**but**) chocolate.
3. ---------- (**These**) is my aunt, she is a dentist.
4. The horse is the ---------- (**faster**) animal.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i can speak english and Arabic. --

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Rhim gazelles

Guiding questions

1- Where do they live?

2- What do they look like?

----

18 محافظة البحر الأحمر

إدارة سفاجا التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a east b west c north d south
2. Hurghada is on the .... Sea.
   a Black b Green c Red d Blue
3. It's a .... city.
   a small b big c bad d dirty
4. About 190,000 people .... there.
   a visit b live c play d run

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live on a .... I love living on water.
   a tent b house c apartment d houseboat
2. .... are perfect for the desert.
   a Horses b Bears c Pelicans d Camels
3. I'm sorry, I .... my parents.
   a disappear b disappoint c disagree d disobey
4. She is cooking lunch in the ....
   a bedroom b balcony c kitchen d living room

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

librarian - and - helpful - but - books

My mother works in a school. She is a (1) .... She looks after the (2) .... She helps the students. Her job is difficult, (3) .... she likes reading books. My mom is very patient and (4) .... I'm proud of her.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mohamed. I'm from Alexandria. My family moved to a new apartment. <u>It</u>'s near my school. So, I can walk to school with my friends.

Our school is near a big zoo, so we can go and see animals like giraffes,lions and elephants. We sometimes go to the beach to swim and enjoy playing with sand as we can build enormous sandcastles. All of us like going to the beach.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word **'It'** refers to ....
   a the apartment   b Alexandria   c Cairo   d the beach
2. Mohamed goes to the school ....
   a by bus   b by taxi   c on foot   d by bike

B- Answer the following questions:

1. Why do Mohamed and his friends go to the beach?

....

2. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The giraffes are the .... (**tall**) animals.
2. Let's .... (**having**) lunch.
3. Camels are bigger .... (**then**) fennec fox.
4. **A:** .... (**When**) is your house? **B:** It's next to the park.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

why do plants need water ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

How to grow tomatoes

Guiding words:
seeds - root

....

....

19 محافظة الوادى الجديد

إدارة الدخيلة التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Camels are beautiful and .... animals.

a small   b big   c strong   d clean

2. They help us to .... things and people.

a carry   b eat   c play   d walk

3. Camels' milk is ....

a sweet   b good   c bad   d delicious

4. We can use their .... to make clothes.

a teeth   b fur   c tails   d eyes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's very .... in the desert during the day.

a hot   b tall   c high   d short

2. I go to the .... to buy clothes and shoes.

a school   b office   c hospital   d shopping mall

3. A: What's your favorite ....?   B: Mangoes

a fruit   b color   c sport   d class

4. The .... land animal is the giraffe.

a tallest   b shortest   c smallest   d fastest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

people - interesting - east - city - sea

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the (1) .... of Egypt on the Red Sea, It's a big (2) .... and about 190,000 (3) .... live here. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of (4) .... things to do.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Omar. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar's father grows .... and onions.

   a mangoes b potatoes c tomatoes d dates

2. Omar's favorite room is the ....

   a living room b kitchen c bathroom d bedroom

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Omar live?

....

4. Who cooks food?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hend likes ice cream .... (**but**) chocolate.
2. How long .... (**does**) camels live?
3. Salma is .... (**tall**) than her sister.
4. This .... (**are**) a high mountain.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

he can speak English and Arabic ....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The plumber

Guiding words
pipes - connect

....

....

20 امتحان الأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. We moved to a new ---------- . (tent - apartment - houseboat)
2. Ali's favorite room is the ---------- . (bedroom - living room - dining room)
3. The balcony is ---------- . (small - big - short)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

rice - delicious - right - special

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some ---------- food for us.
Maged : Mom, it looks ---------- !
Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?
Maged : I think we grow ---------- in Egypt.
Mom : Yes, that's ---------- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the fennec fox live?

----

2. What does the fennec fox eat?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.
   a smaller b bigger c taller
4. During the day, it is .... in the desert.
   a warm b cold c hot
5. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a ear b fur c tail

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My cat is the .... on our street.
   a biggest b big c bigger
2. We watch TV in the ....
   a bathroom b living room c kitchen
3. The .... fix the cars and buses.
   a cleaners b plumbers c mechanics
4. .... is a renewable energy source.
   a Gas b Oil c Wave energy
5. I want to play football, ... my leg hurts.
   a and b so c but

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - Where - work - do?

....

2. are - Why - the - tomatoes - green?

....

3. grandparents - us - with - My - live.

....

4. is - than - an elephant - smaller - A mouse.

....

5. listen - teachers - to - carefully - We - our.

....

21 امتحان الأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر

1. Hossam's favorite room is the .... (kitchen - bedroom - living room)
2. Hossam .... do his homework quietly. (can - can't - is)
3. Hossam has a .... balcony. (small - big - cold)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

live - houseboat - you - Nile

Hazem : Where do .... live?

Anas : I live on a .... What about you?

Hazem : I .... in a village next to the ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many times do they practice every week?

....

2. Does Zain eat healthy food?

....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Zain is in grade..........

a three b four c five

4. He likes to play ....

a volleyball b tennis c basketball

5. Zain wants to drink more ....

a juice b water c milk

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I sleep in a big .... It has two big beds.

a bathroom b bedroom c kitchen

2. **A** :.......... is the cat? **B** : It's under the table.

a What b Why c Where

3. The mouse is .... than the elephant.

a smallest b smaller c small

4. .... keep the school clean.

a Cleaners b Plumbers c Teachers

5. Camels are perfect for the ....

a sea b lake c desert

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - the - Where - mall - shopping?

....

2. you - helping - Do - people - like?

....

3. park - play - the - I - in - football.

....

4. next - My home - is - the - to - school.

....

5. are - and - in - The pelican - the bear - the river.

....

22 امتحان طلاب الدمج

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

breakfast - do - bed - my

I get up at six o'clock. I wash (1) .... face.I have (2) .... at seven. I get dressed. I go to school at seven thirty.I (3) .... my homework in the evening. I watch TV at night. I go to (4) .... at ten o'clock..

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The guide works in the .... industry.

(a) tourism (b) education (c) fishing (d) farming

2. The rhim gazelles have big ears and long ....

(a) eyes (b) horns (c) coats (d) feet

3. The emperor lives in a ....

(a) tent (b) school (c) palace (d) hospital

4. They used rainwater to .... the seeds

(a) move (b) eat (c) dry (d) water

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Noha. I went to the zoo last week. I went with my family.I went there by car. I arrived there at ten o'clock. I saw the lion and the tiger. I saw many birds.I was very happy. It was a nice day. We took many photos.We went home at seven p.m.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about a visit to the ....

(a) museum (b) zoo (c) park (d) desert

2. Noha went to the zoo ....

(a) by herself (b) alone (c) on foot (d) with her family

3. Noha saw ---------- at the zoo.

a animals b cars c birds d a&c

4. Noha took many ---------- .

a bags b books c photos d animals

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form in the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. have - some - juice - like - I'd - to.

a I'd like to have some juice.

b I'd like have to some juice.

c I'd have like to some juice.

2. your - should - wear - You - uniform - school.

a You should wear your uniform school.

b You should wear your school uniform.

c You wear should school your uniform.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

a (.......................) I ordered fish and rice there.

b (.......................) I ordered salad,too.

c (.......................) After I had my meal, I went back home.

d (.......................) Yesterday, I went to a restaurant.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع
الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات
الخاصة بكتاب Bit by Bit

Test 1 on Units 1-2

There are a lot of animals in our country. These animals are beautiful, scary, dangerous and helpful. For example, snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they are important. They eat insects and lizards. This controls the numbers of the small animals.

Test 2 on Units 1-2

I like horses. They have large beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert. They need people to look after them.

Test 1 on Units 3-4

Gamal lives with his family in a small village. There are a lot of places. There's a school next to the post office. The bank is behind Gamal's house. But there aren't shopping malls or museums. It's a clean and quiet village.

Test 1 on Units 3-4

My uncle grows tomatoes on his farm. He can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. He plants the seeds in the soil. He waters the plants every day.

Test 1 on Units 5-6

We should respect all jobs around us because they are important in our life. For example, the cleaner keeps our streets clean. The plumber fixes our pipes. The electrician connects our homes to electricity.

Test 2 on Units 5-6

Mr Hossam is a fisherman. He works on the sea. He wakes up early every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish. He comes back in the afternoon and sells his fish in his shop.

General Tests

Test 1

There are many interesting jobs in our city. A plumber fixes faucets. An electrician connects homes to electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage. A bus driver takes children to school.

Test 2

My friend Mohamed lives in a village. His house is next to the school. Mohamed's father is a farmer. He grows onions and tomatoes. He raises chickens, too.

Test 3

Soha works at the supermarket. We meet her when we buy food. Soha is very kind and happy. We see Soha at the supermarket every morning.

Test 4

Judy thinks she is healthy. She doesn't eat candy. She likes walking. She does a lot of sport.

Test 5

Mariam lives in a big city. Her house is near the Nile. Mariam can see the river all day. Mariam's father is a doctor and her mother is a teacher.

Test 6

Reham lives in Hurghada. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars. There's the Sahara Desert. Tourists go on safaris there.

Test 7

The fennec fox lives in the deserts. It loses heat from its ears. Its ears are very big. It needs big ears to hear insects.

Test 8

Judy thinks she is healthy. On the weekend, she walks to her grandma's house. She really likes walking. She likes mangoes. Mangoes are her favorite fruit.

Test 9

Omar lives in Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt. It is on the Red Sea. About 190,000 people live in Hurghada.

Test 10

Egyptian farmers are important for us. They produce many things. They grow onions, lemons, grapes and sugarcane. They raise many animals.

Test 11

Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make many things. They used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus grows near the Nile Delta.

Test 12

Mom is preparing lunch in the kitchen. She is cooking potatoes and chicken. I like them very much. All food we have comes from our country Egypt. Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow vegetables and raise chickens.

Test 13

Zain lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. His house is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees in front of the house.

Test 14

My grandfather is a farmer. He has a small farm. He raises chickens and sheep. We are happy to eat fresh food.

Test 15

Today, I read about the germination process. We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot. A shoot grows taller to have leaves. Finally, the plant grows flowers and fruits.

Test 16

Damietta is an Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients.The farmers can grow many crops such as rice and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.

Test 17

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and oranges to the markets. People need these plants to eat.

Test 18

Hurghada is a big city in the east of Egypt. Hurghada is on the Red Sea. About 190,000 people live there.

Test 19

Camels are beautiful. They are strong animals. They help us to carry things and people.Camels' milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

Al Azhar Test 20

We moved to a new apartment. My brother Ali likes the living room. The balcony is big.

Al Azhar Test 21

Hossam's family moved to a new apartment. Hossam's favorile room is the bedroom. He can do his homework quietly. Hossam has a big balcony.

Notes